KUNIMAIPA GRAMMAR

Morphophonemics To Discourse

Elsine Geary

Summer Institute of Linguistics
Ukarumpa, Papua New Guinea
The workpaper in this volume express the author's knowledge at the time of writing. It does not necessarily provide a complete treatment of her topic. However, it is felt that this paper should be made available at this time.

Richard Loving,
Editor

Copyright © 1977 by the
Summer Institute of Linguistics
Ukarumpa, E.H.P., Papua New Guinea

Published 1977
Reprinted 1985

Printed by the S.I.L. Printing Department
Ukarumpa, F.H.P., Papua New Guinea

ISBN 9980-9-0198-4
0. INTRODUCTION 1
1. MORPHOPHONEMICS 3
   1.0 Introduction 3
   1.1 Morphophonemic rules 3
2. STEMS 7
   2.0 Introduction 7
   2.1 Verb stem groups 7
   2.2 Verb stem classes 10
3. WORDS 11
   3.0 Introduction 11
   3.1 Word classes which are usually not suffixed 12
      3.1.1 Responses 12
      3.1.2 Exclamations 12
      3.1.3 Attention particles 13
      3.1.4 Vocative particles 13
      3.1.5 Conjunctions 13
      3.1.6 Names 14
      3.1.7 Particle 14
   3.2 Word classes which are suffixed or non-suffixed depending
      on which tagmemes they manifest 14
      3.2.1 Adjectives 14
      3.2.2 Pronouns 16
      3.2.3 Interrogative words 18
      3.2.4 Nouns 19
      3.2.5 Verbs 21
         3.2.5.1 Verb Structure 21
            5.2.5.1.1 Verb Endocentre 23
            5.2.5.1.2 Verb Exocentre 28
   3.3 Word classes which are obligatorily suffixed 31
      3.3.1 Demonstratives 31
      3.3.2 Verbal nouns 32
   3.4 Word classes which cannot be classified according to
      suffixation 32
3.4.1 Locationals
  3.4.1.1 Locationals
  3.4.1.2 Locationals
  3.4.1.3 Locationals

3.4.2 Temporals
3.4.3 Adverbs
3.4.4 Auxiliaries

4. PHRASES
4.0 Introduction
4.1 Verb phrases
  4.1.1 Attributive
  4.1.2 Causative
  4.1.3 Auxiliary
  4.1.4 Periphrastic
  4.1.5 Immiscible
  4.1.6 Negative

4.2 Pronoun phrases
  4.2.1 Specifier
  4.2.2 Accompaniment
  4.2.3 Adpositional
  4.2.4 Intensifier

4.3 Location phrases
  4.3.1 Location
  4.3.2 Apposition
  4.3.3 Demonstrative

4.4 Time phrases
  4.4.1 Apposition
  4.4.2 Demonstrative

4.5 Noun phrases
  4.5.1 Included clause
  4.5.2 Accompaniment
  4.5.3 Resemblance

5. CLAUSES
5.0 Introduction
5.1 Clause structure
  5.1.1 Transitive
  5.1.2 Ditransitive
  5.1.3 Intransitive
  5.1.4 Existential
  5.1.5 Stative
5.1.6 Equational 70
5.1.7 Pre-quote 72
5.1.8 Post-quote 73

5.2 Clause level peripheral tagmenes 73
5.2.1 Subject 74
5.2.2 Manner 74
5.2.3 Purpose, reason and benefaction 74
5.2.4 Instrument/accompaniment 75
5.2.5 Location 76
5.2.6 Time 76

5.3 Independent, dependent and non-finite clause distinctions 77
5.4 Clause level tagme order 77
5.5 Clause level expansion possibilities 78

6. SENTENCES 84
6.6. Introduction 84

6.1. Complex Sentences 87
6.1.1 Sentences with Bases linked by predicate suffixation or an obligatory conjunction 87
6.1.1.1 Series Sentences 87
6.1.1.2 Contrafactual Sentence 92
6.1.1.3 Antithetical Sentence 96
6.1.1.4 Coordinate 1 Sentence 99
6.1.1.5 Alternative Sentence 104
6.1.1.6 Circumstance Result Sentence 108

6.1.2 Sentences with Bases linked by juxtaposition 112
6.1.2.1 Coordinate 2 Sentence 112
5.1.2.2 Listing Sentence 115
6.1.2.3 Amplification Sentence 119
6.1.2.4 Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence 122
6.1.2.5 Reason Sentence 125

6.1.3 Quotation Sentences 128
6.1.3.1 Direct Quotation Sentence 128
6.1.3.2 Indirect Quotations 131

6.2. Non-complex Sentences 133
6.2.1 Mini-base Sentences 133
6.2.1.1 Negative Sentence 133
6.2.1.2 Abilitative Sentence 135
6.2.1.3 Frustrative Sentence 136
6.2.1.4 Quasi-clausal Sentence 137
6.3. Sentence Periphery
6.4. Examples of embedding
6.5. Summary of mapping of Deep Structures on Surface Structures

7. PARAGRAPHS
7.0 Introduction
7.1 Linkage within the Paragraph
7.2 Paragraph Types
  7.2.1 Complex Paragraph types
    7.2.1.1 Narrative Paragraph
    7.2.1.2 Behavioural Paragraph
    7.2.1.3 Descriptive Paragraph
  7.2.2 Non-Complex Paragraphs
    7.2.2.1 Relational Paragraph
    7.2.2.2 Time Contrast Paragraph
    7.2.2.3 Identical Predicate Paragraph
    7.2.2.4 Coordinate Paragraph
    7.2.2.5 Exposition Paragraph
    7.2.2.6 Dialogue Paragraph
    7.2.2.7 Execution Paragraph

8. DISCOURSE
8.0 Introduction
8.1 Narrative Discourse
  8.1.0 Introduction
    8.1.1 Contemporary Narrative Discourse
    8.1.2 Legend Narrative Discourse
    8.1.3 Peripheral tagsmemes
    8.1.4 Linkage
  8.1.5 Chronology of events in Narrative Discourse
  8.1.6 Participants in Narrative Discourse
    8.1.6.0 Introduction
      8.1.6.1 Introduction of participants and props
      8.1.6.2 Interaction of participants
8.1.6.3 Removal of participants 234
8.1.6.4 Expansion and contraction of participants 235
8.1.7 Background information 237
8.1.8 Cohesion in Narrative Discourse 239
8.2 Behavioural Discourse 241
  8.2.0 Introduction 241
  8.2.1 Tagmemes observed 241
  8.2.2 Person, aspect, mood and mode in Behavioural Discourse 242
  8.2.3 New tagmeme indicators 243
  8.2.4 Questions in Behavioural Discourse 244
  8.2.5 Paragraph linkage 244
8.3 Descriptive Discourse 245
  8.3.0 Introduction 245
  8.3.1 Tagmemes observed in Descriptive Discourse 245
8.4 Epistolary Discourse 248
  8.4.0 Introduction 248
  8.4.1 Tagmemes observed in Epistolary Discourse 249

9. TEXTS
  9.1 Contemporary Narrative Discourse 251
  9.2 Legend Narrative Discourse 259
  9.3 Behavioural Discourse 262
  9.4 Descriptive Discourse 264
  9.5 Epistolary Discourse 266

FOOTNOTES 271
### Abbreviations Relating to Surface Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>first person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>second person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>third person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt</td>
<td>Alternative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amp</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ant</td>
<td>Antithetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App N P</td>
<td>Appositional Noun Phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Benefaction tagmeme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be</td>
<td>Behavioral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Comment tagmeme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cert</td>
<td>certuitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chs</td>
<td>change of subject following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co Cl</td>
<td>Compound Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cont</td>
<td>continuative morpheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Coordinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-R</td>
<td>Circumstance Result Sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cto</td>
<td>continuity and time overlap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dep</td>
<td>Dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des</td>
<td>desiderative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desc</td>
<td>Descriptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D Qu S</td>
<td>Direct Quotation Sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D T P</td>
<td>Demonstrative Temporal Phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Existential tagmeme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emph</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equ</td>
<td>equational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex Cl</td>
<td>Existential Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excl</td>
<td>exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp</td>
<td>Exposition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I/A Instrument/Accompaniment tagmeme
Im.im Imperative
imp imperfect aspect
incl inclusive
Ind Indicative
ID Indirect Object tagmeme
IP Identical Predicate
int Intensifier
L Location tagmeme
Loc Location
M Manner tagmeme
Narr Narrative
Neg, neg Negative
Neg Pos Negative Positive
N-f Non-finite clause
Nom Nominalized
nom nominalizer
NP Noun Phrase
O Object tagmeme
P Predicate tagmeme
Pa Paragraph
per perfect aspect
pl plural
poss possessive
PP Post-predicate
pre present
pro prohibitive
Pu Purpose tagmeme
pur purpose
qual qualitative
Ques Question
R Referent tagmeme
re reason
ref reflexive
Rel Relational
S Sentence
s singular
Se S Series Sentence
sp subject plural
Su Subject tagmeme
sub subject
ss same subject following
SS Simple Sentence
T Time tagmeme
TC Time Contrast
To Topic tagmeme
vol volitional
( ) in examples - does not belong to the construction being described
in formulas - the section of the sentence optionally repeats
/ in top line of Sentence examples - indicates beginning and end of Bases with clyme fillers
// in top line of Sentence examples - indicates beginning and end of Bases with sentences embedded
[ ] match across

DEFINITION of SYMBOLS RELATING TO DEEP GRAMMAR

a ∈ U term a is an element of set U
a,b,c,d terms of predicates, normally noun phrases or their substitutes, always written to the right of the predicate containing them
a' term which is a synonym or situational equivalent of term a
P,Q,N, predications for which a value has been assigned to all the variables from appropriate domains to form an acceptable statement
¬P negation of predication P
predication which is a synonym or situational equivalent of predication P

predication which is an antonym or situational opposite of predication P

predication P denoting a non-punctiliar activity or state

predication P denoting a punctiliar event

predication P denoting a non-punctiliar activity or state which continues so as to overlap with the time of a punctiliar event in predication Q

predication P denoting a punctiliar activity or state which is included in the time of predication Q which also continues so as to overlap with the time of a punctiliar event in predication R

if predication P, then predication Q

predication P with first term (actor) a

predication P with first term (actor) a and second term (goal) b

predication P with first term (actor) a and predication Q with first term (actor) b distinct from a. If no terms are specified in an expression, it is understood that the actors may be either the same or different.

predication P with first term (actor) a and predication Q with same first term (actor) a

conjunct of identical predications with non-identical terms which have the same function in each of the predications

apposition operator $\beta$ applied to predication P, denoting the opposite sense of predication P, with P and every other predication (unmarked by $\beta$) in the same expression taking one of two values either a positive statement or its negation. For example, $(P \beta Q) \sim P \sim Q$ means any one of four possibilities.

$(P \beta Q) \sim P \sim Q$ or $(P \beta Q) \sim P \sim Q$ or $(P \beta Q) \sim P \sim Q$ or $(P \beta Q) \sim P \sim Q$

predication P involving term a which corresponds in function to any other term or terms enclosed in parentheses in the same expression

predication P or predication Q or both
P(U) predication P with universal set U as a term which has
the same function as other terms in the same which
are enclosed in parentheses. i.e. in P(U: P(a)), U has
the same function in P as term a has in predication P.

Note that the following qualifiers or quantifiers occur as preposed
subscripts to predicate symbols, and are not to be identified as terms
of the respective predications, which occur postposed to the predication
symbols.

fP predication P which denotes a facility or ability
relationship to the following predication

gP a predication involving a more generic term which
contrasts with a corresponding and more specific
term in predication sP

iP predication P denoting an intent relationship with the
following predication (or previous predication)

sP predication P involving a more specific term which
contrasts with a corresponding and more generic term in gP

wP predication P which denotes reported speech in the
following predication, without any implication of
whether or not the statement results in any corresponding
action

tP predication P which denotes a thinking or supposing
relationship to the following predication

U universal set such as the set of all people or all places

( ) expression enclosed in brackets, which must contain
at least one predication, is an unstated presupposition
with respect to the remainder of the expression not so
enclosed

Predicates appearing in same formula joined by a or v are to be
grouped together prior to conjoining with a.
0. INTRODUCTION

There are seven levels of the Kunimaipa grammatical structure which have been investigated and described in this volume. These are stem, word, phrase, clause, sentence, paragraph and discourse. "Kunimaipa Nominals", a description of nouns and some noun phrases, was published by the linguistic circle of Canberra in 1970.

This description is based on the tagmemic theory of linguistics as developed by Robert E. Longacre. Tagmemic formulas, in the form of bidimensional arrays, are generally used throughout the paper to present each construction as concisely as possible.

The data for this analysis were collected under the auspices of the Summer Institute of Linguistics from three villages in the Buba Valley, from 1959 to 1976. Approximately 100 pages of text have been analysed with the help of a number of different language helpers.

The analysis of the Kunimaipa language was begun by Alan R. Pence, also of the Summer Institute of Linguistics. Thus the first two chapters were written by him, and the initial analysis of the verb structure was done by him. The author would like to express her appreciation to him for this work and for encouragement from him in doing further analysis of the language.

The author wishes to acknowledge, with thanks, the help of a concordance made from language texts by an IBM 1410 computer sponsored by the Linguistic Information Retrieval Project of the Summer Institute of Linguistics and University of Oklahoma Research Institute sponsored by grant 0S-270 of the National Science Foundation.

Appreciation is due also to Elizabeth Moran for her help in the analysis and writing up of this material, especially in the formulas which indicate the deep structure of the sentences.
1. MORPHOPHONEMICS

1.0 Introduction

The phonemes of Kunimaipa are: voiceless obstruents, p, s, t, k; voiced stopped obstruents, b (medial only), d, r (retroflexed flap or trill), g (non-backed); voiced fricative obstruents, v, l (lateral), and h (backed velar); voiced nasals, m, n, and ng (velar), and vowels, i, e, a, o, and u. Stress occurs on the penultimate syllable in all the examples listed.

1.1 Morphophonemic rules

1.1.1 It is useful to give one general morphophonemic rule which applies in certain areas throughout the language.

Any stem or affix whose basic final vowel is a (such a will be symbolized throughout this paper as A in these forms), has three allomorphs which are conditioned phonemically by the quality of the vowel which occurs next in the construction. Allomorphs with final a occur word finally or preceding a syllable containing A; allomorphs with final o occur preceding a syllable containing o, u or ai; allomorphs with final e occur preceding a syllable containing e or i. This vowel harmony is illustrated by the verb stem sa 'go' which in the following examples has the shapes sa- ~ so- ~ se-:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sa-ha} & \quad \text{go-3s/imp} \\
& \quad \text{'He went'} \\
\text{so-ho} & \quad \text{go-1s/imp} \\
& \quad \text{I went'} \\
\text{se-ngi} & \quad \text{go-2s/imp} \\
& \quad \text{You went'} \\
\end{align*}
\]

This morphophonemic rule is consistent in all cases except before -ma (1s/imp), where the stem form with vowel o occurs.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{so-ma} & \quad \text{go-1s/imp} \\
& \quad \text{I will go'} \\
\end{align*}
\]

An affix illustrating this same alternation is the object prefix na- (1,2s). In the examples which follow it has the forms na- ~ no- ~ na-:
na-va
1s-get
'Get me'

no-ura-ha
2s-nit-3s/per
'He hit you'

ne-me-ha
1s-put-3pl/per
'They sent me'

na-vo-ho-pane
2s-get-cont-3s/imp
'He will keep getting you'

The last example above illustrates further the need to label stem allomorphs ending in a as basic, and also shows a further refinement of the rule when applied to prefixes. In the example, the form of the stem VA 'get' is actually VO, conditioned by a following O. However, since VA is basic a, the form of the prefix is na in conformity with its basic rather than its altered form.

As well as certain verb stems and verb affixes, this morphophonemic rule applies to the pronominal possessive suffix -mì, and the demonstrative word epa- 'this'.

paru-tu-xo
they-poss-qual
'their things'

pi-me-sì
he-poss-qual
'his thing'

ne-ma-ta
1-poss-qual
'my thing'

epa-ngade
this-qual
'this fire'

epa-pu
this-qual
'this person'
1.1.2 When two vowels of the same quality come together, the resulting vowel is lengthened but is written as a single vowel.

\[ \text{sa} \cdot \text{-ame} \cdot \text{go} \cdot \text{cont} \cdot \text{pl} / \text{per} = \text{sa-me-go-cont-pl} / \text{per} \]

\[ \text{road} \cdot \text{-pro} \cdot \text{qual} = \text{road-qual} \]

\[ \text{vetega} \cdot \text{carelessly} \cdot \text{-ama} \cdot \text{only} = \text{vetega-ma-carelessly-only} \]

'We are going'

'road'

'without care'

1.1.3 Word final vowels are usually not audible although they are written throughout this paper. They are audible in the following contexts:

1. A question - the final vowel is spoken with rising intonation
2. For emphasis - the final vowel is spoken with falling intonation
3. When a word is CV only
4. When the preceding consonant is /r/ the tendency is to say the vowel, but in this context it is very lenis
5. When the following word begins with a vowel, the word final vowel occurs but is quite lenis

\[ \text{sa-ha}?', \text{go} / \text{3s} / \text{per} \]

\[ \text{emo-ho!}, \text{come-Is} / \text{per} \]

'He did go!'

'I have come!'

\[ \text{sa}!', \text{go} \]

'Go!'
ahana-ri
man-qual
'smen'

ngeti ep2-vo
talk this-qual
'this talk'

1.1.4 When inA 'eat' occurs word initially, the i is lost.

me-ina-ha
Spl-eat-3s/per
'He ate them'

na-ha
eat-3s/per
'He ate'
2. STEMS

2.0 Introduction

Stems usually consist of simple roots but there are compound and coordinate noun stems (described in Kunimaipa Nominals), compound location stems (described in 3.5.1.3 - location words), and derived and compound verb stems.

Verb stem groups are set up on the basis of morphophonemics.

2.1 Verb stem groups

Two main groupings of verb stems are made based on the alternation of stem allomorphs. Subgroupings within these two groups are based on the actual shapes of the forms.

2.1.1 Group A includes any stem whose (basic) final vowel is A (which follow the morphophonemic rule of Chapter I). There are two subgroups of A, Aa and Ab. Members of Aa are simple roots with final A.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>demA</td>
<td>'bind'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edA</td>
<td>'tear down'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sA</td>
<td>'go'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tA</td>
<td>'do'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toutA</td>
<td>'sit'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angarA</td>
<td>'clear away'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arA</td>
<td>'fly'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nA</td>
<td>'give'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ngA</td>
<td>'tell'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subgroup Ab is a small group of derived stems each of which consist of root plus derivational morpheme -za. This morpheme is obligatory in its occurrence word finally but optional in all occurrences word medially, and its occurrence or non-occurrence does not signal any meaning difference. Each stem in this group, then, has four forms; the verb rezA 'break' has the forms rezA ~ rez ~ rez ~ re.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rezA</td>
<td>'step'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngizA</td>
<td>'spit, vomit'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ngizA</td>
<td>'help'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rezA</td>
<td>'break'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rizA</td>
<td>'close'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tezA</td>
<td>'take off'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The final vowel of group Aa stems could have been considered an allomorph of the stem formative morpheme -A. However, this morpheme -A is optional in its occurrence and the A of subgroup Aa is not, so this analysis has not been followed.

2.1.2 Group B is made up of those stems whose final vowel does not follow the morphophonemic rule of 1.1.1. There are three subgroups of B, Ba, Bb, and Bc.

Stem subgroup Ba is made up of roots which have final vowel e. This stem vowel is present in all constructions in which these roots occur.

behe 'come across'
behe 'put'
behe 'plant'
behe 'carry on shoulder'
behe 'throw away'

Stem subgroup Bb is made up of a derived stem consisting of the root he plus derivational morpheme -A giving behe 'be'. The other members of this subgroup are compounds of various other roots with behe (shortened to -ehe).

The derivational morpheme occurs only in constructions in which endocentered verb suffixes do not occur. The one exception to this is the imperative subject plural suffix -i which follows the derivational morpheme and never occurs without it.

behe 'be'
behe 'be covered'
behe 'be lying'
behe 'be standing'
behe 'be put in'
behe 'be inside (bag)'
behe 'be put'

Allomorphs of the stem behe 'be' (and related compounds) are behe (be- or ke-). Their occurrence is conditioned in the following manner: behe occurs without endocentered verb affixes, be- occurs word initially and ke- occurs word medially.
he-zA
be
't is being'
he-ngi
be-2s/per
't you were'
ha-ke-ha
cert-be-3s/per
't he certainly was'

Stem subgroup Bc is made up of a compound stem consisting of a root whose vowel is a, coupled to derivational morpheme -ZA. This morpheme occurs in constructions in which endocentred verb suffixes do not occur. The one exception to this is the imperative subject plural suffix -i which follows the derivational morpheme and never occurs without it. The only stem in this group is hazA 'speak'.

Allomorphs of this stem are hass (ha- ~ hao-), (ka- ~ kao-). Their occurrence is conditioned in the following manner: hass occurs alone, ha- and kao- occur word initially, and ka- and kao- occur word medially. hao- and kao- precede morphemes -ma, -paine, -tunA, and -val. ha- and kao- occur elsewhere.

hazA!
speak
'Speak!'
ha-ngi
speak-2s/prf
't you spoke'
hao-na
speak-1s/imp
'I will speak'
ha-ka-ha
cert-speak-3s/per
't he certainly spoke'
ha-kao-na
cert-speak-1s/imp
'I will certainly speak'
2.2 Verb stem classes

There are four verb stem classes based on the occurrence of stems in verb constructions. These stem classes cross cut the stem groups previously described, with only group Bb and Class 111 being the same. These verb stem classes are described in Chapter 3.
3. WORDS

3.0 Introduction

A word is a level of 'syntagmeme' of a comparatively low hierarchical order, ranking below such syntagmemes as the Phrase and Clause, and above such syntagmemes as the stem.\textsuperscript{2}

Word classes are separated on the basis of:

(1) Affixation or non-affixation

(2) Type of affixation

(3) The units they manifest in those higher level tagmemes Phrase, Clause and Sentence.

Some words occur in more than one class.

There are two suffixes which optionally occur on many of the different word classes. These are -\textit{man} 'only', and -\textit{hara} 'just'.

Word classes which in most instances are not suffixed are:

Responses
Exclamations
Attention Particles
Vocative Particles
Conjunctions
Names
Particles

Word classes which are suffixed or non-suffixed according to which Phrase or Clause tagmeme they manifest are:

Adjectives
Pronouns
Interrogatives
Nouns
Verbs

Word classes which are obligatorily suffixed are:

Demonstratives
Verbal nouns
Word classes which cannot be classified according to suffixation but which differ from other word types in their internal structure and in the Phrase and Clause level tagmemes that they manifest are:

Locationals
Temporals
Adverbs
Auxiliaries

3.1 Word classes which are usually not suffixed

3.1.1 Responses

Responses are a small class of words which occur in the sentence periphery and as conversational replies.

kara 'okay'
e 'yes'
gu 'yes'
evo 'no'
ma 'true'
vataha 'perhaps'
vomo 'nothing, no'
peiram 'er..something'
voai (reply to name being spoken)
rotap 'true'

The only response word which can be suffixed is vataha 'perhaps' which is optionally suffixed with -ama 'only'.

3.1.2 Exclamations

Exclamations are a class of words which also occur in the sentence periphery. Some of these are:

 numa (surprise)
u (mistake)
suize (regret)
sip (dislike)
eir (fright)
pe (so!)
3.1.3 Attention particles

Attention Particles occur only in spoken or reported speech.

| gui   | (call to come)   |
| ae    | (attention getter) |
| siu   | (attention getter - close) |

3.1.4 Vocative particles

Vocative Particles are titles of address and occur in the sentence periphery.

| engarim | 'hey, woman' |
| erom    | 'hey, man'   |
| engarohol | 'hey, children' |
| guai    | 'uncle'      |
| nanei   | 'brother'    |

5.1.5 Conjunctions

Conjunctions are a limited class which occur as links in Phrases, Classes and Sentences. These are:

| mete  | 'and, but, then' |
| ma    | 'or, and'        |
| povoza| 'therefore'      |
| ong   | 'but'            |

The following conjunction combinations are permitted:

| mete povoza | 'and therefore' |
| ong povoza  | 'but therefore' |
| povoza mete | 'therefore then'|
| ong meteωmete | 'but, then' |

Only one conjunction occurs with a suffix and that is povoza 'therefore' which occurs with -hohoh -ho (emphasis).

These conjunctions primarily link Sentence and Paragraph tagmemes but mete, ma and povoza also link Phrase and Clause tagmemes.
3.1.6 Names

Names are a class of words which name persons, places, days and months.

(i) Personal names do not take noun qualitative suffixes but optionally occur with syntactic relators. Personal names expound Clause level Subject, Object, Benefaction and Location, and either Item or Apposition of Apposition Noun Phrase.

(ii) Place names occasionally occur with locative suffixes and manifest clause level location, and the Apposition and Location tagmemes of Location Phrases.

(iii) Day names are all borrowed and are usually suffixed with noun qualitative suffixes -ta or -vo, followed by the locative suffix -ka. Day names manifest Clause level Time tagmeme as well as Time and Apposition tagmemes of Time Phrases.

made-ta-ka
Monday-qual-ku
'on Monday'

pode-ta-ka
Thursday-qual-ku
'on Thursday'

sade-vo-ka
Sunday-qual-ku
'on Sunday'

(iv) Month names are all borrowed words, occur unsuffixed, and act the same as day names.

3.1.7 Particle

There is one particle which is used to introduce a quote. This word is never suffixed.

pata
'reply'

3.2 Word classes which are suffixed or non-suffixed depending on which tagmemes they manifest:

3.2.1 Adjectives

All adjectives manifest:
(a) The Modifier-Head tagmeme of a Descriptive Noun Phrase in which case they obligatorily take noun qualitative suffixes.

(b) The Modifier tagmeme of a Descriptive Noun Phrase where they are obligatorily unsuffixed.

(c) The Comment tagmeme of an Equational Clause.

- tina  'good'
- goe  'small'
- angavai  'old, big'
- magel  'new, unfinished'
- mapo  'all'
- hori  'bad'
- tehutoho  'lightweight'

Adjectives are sub-divided according to their occurrence in higher level tagmemes.

Adjective, is a sub-set of adjectives which manifest the clause level Manner tāgmeme. In this position adjectives optionally occur with either -ama 'only' or -hara 'just'.

- tina  'good'
- hori  'bad'
- keza  'strong'
- aho  'big'
- upai  'nothing'
- vono  'nothing'
- nema  'only'

One compound adjective occurs manifesting Manner and it is always suffixed with both -hara and -ama.

- tina-ra  tina-hara-ama
  good-and good-just-only
  'exceptionally good'

Adjective, is a sub-set of adjectives which do not expound clause level Manner tāgmeme but which manifest the Auxiliary tagmeme of an Auxiliary Verb Phrase. Suffixes -ama and -hara are optional here. Noun qualitative suffixes do not occur here.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hangi</td>
<td>'return'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holo</td>
<td>'dry'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homongai</td>
<td>'heavy'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tehotoho</td>
<td>'lightweight'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>havoc</td>
<td>'preparation'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tek</td>
<td>'short'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives are a small sub-set of adjectives which realize the Auxiliary tagmeme of Auxiliary Verb Phrase but which also realize the Pro-predicate of the Stative Clause and the Comment tagmeme of the Equational Clause. These are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>holade</td>
<td>'know'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mnunu</td>
<td>'don't know'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuta</td>
<td>'ignorant'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laey</td>
<td>'dislike'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saita</td>
<td>'desire'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.2 Pronouns

This word class never occurs with noun qualitative suffixes attached directly to the pronoun stem, but has its own unique set of pronoun suffixes. Pronouns manifest:

(a) The Subject, Object, Accompaniment/instrument, Location or Benefactive Clause tagmemes in which case appropriate syntactic relator suffixes occur.

(b) The Head tagmeme of Accompaniment, Appositional and Intensi-
    fier Pronoun Phrases.

(c) The Possessor tagmeme of a Possessive Noun Phrase.

(d) Either Head tagmeme of a Coordinate Noun Phrase where the
    coordinator suffix -ra is attached to the pronoun.

(e) The Apposition or Summary tagmeme of an Appositional Noun
    Phrase.

(f) The Head tagmeme of an Accompaniment Noun Phrase.
There are seven pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>rei(excl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rari(incl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>paru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are two orders of pronoun suffixes, both of which are optional.

Pronoun = + Nucleus | First Order | Second Order
Any pronoun        | -pi 'dual' | -ma 'poss'
                    | -paro 'all' | -man 'volitional'
                    |             | -mau 'intensifier'

Rules:

1. First order suffixes occur only with plural pronouns.
2. rari-pi is a unique form meaning 'we three'(inclusive).
3. rei-pi 'we two' is either inclusive or exclusive depending on whether or not the verb following has the inclusive suffix -pain.
4. The suffixes occurring in each order are mutually exclusive.
5. When a pronoun with the intensifier suffix occurs as Clause level Subject, the Subject syntactic relator -ho always occurs with it.
6. The volitional suffix -man usually occurs with the subject pronoun of a clause and when it occurs with an object pronoun it acts as an intensifier.

paro-pi-man
'the: two of themselves'

rari-ma
we(incl)-poss
'our'
3.2.3 Interrogative words

Interrogative words occur in the clause or phrase tagmeme appropriate to the question. There is an element which is partially consistent in all these words, but not consistent enough to be analysed as an interrogative stem.

(1) taira ~ tair

(a) 'what' acts as an auxiliary in the Auxiliary Verb Phrase. The suffixes -ang and -basa do not occur with it. Although it might appear that this is functioning as an object no noun qualitative suffixes are allowed and it functions in Clauses which already have an object.

tair ta-ha
what do-S/PER
'What did he do?'

(b) 'how' functions as the Manner tagmeme of a predicated clause.

taira oma-ha
how come-S/PER
'How did he come?'

(2) taira - 'which' functions as the Modifier or Modifier-Head tagmeme of a descriptive Noun Phrase and in these positions is either obligatorily suffixed or obligatorily non-suffixed.

ahana taira-pu
man which-qual
'which man'

(3) tairaiza 'why/what for/about what' manifests the Clause level Benefaction tagmeme.
(4) taeka 'where' and taekananga 'from where' manifest Clause Level Location tagmeme.

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{taeka} & \text{bez}\text{a} \\
\text{taekananga} & \text{come}\text{-5s}\text{per} \\
\end{array}
\]

'tWhere is he?'

'tWhere did he come from?'

taekananga also manifests the Modifier-Head tagmeme of a Descriptive Noun Phrase but takes only animate noun qualitative suffixes -pu and -ri in that position.

taekananga-pu

from where-qual

't the one from where'

(5) tairaraha 'when' manifests the Clause Time tagmeme.

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{tairaraha} & \text{come}\text{-5s}\text{per} \\
\end{array}
\]

'tWhen did you come?'

(6) taira taira is a compound meaning 'how many'. This is a rarely used expression which has been observed manifesting the Namer tagmeme of the clause.

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{krismas} & \text{taira taira} \\
\text{year} & \text{how many} \\
\text{rau-ha} & \text{become-3pl}\text{per} \\
\end{array}
\]

'How many years have gone?'

3.2.4 Nouns

Nouns are a large class of words which optionally take six orders of suffixes (see Kunimaipa Nominals). All nouns manifest:

(a) The Head tagmeme of a Descriptive Noun Phrase where they are obligatorily unsuffixed.

(b) The Head tagmemes of other Noun Phrases. In these Noun
Phrases they are obligatorily suffixed with noun qualitative suffixes plus Phrase level linking suffixes.

(c) Clause level Subject, Object, Accompaniment/instrument, Benefaction, Location and Topic tagmemes where they are obligatorily suffixed with noun qualitative suffixes plus suffixes appropriate to the Clause level tagmeme.

(d) Clause level Comment tagmeme in which case noun suffixes are optional.

There are a few nouns which optionally occur without noun qualitative suffixes when manifesting Clause level tagmemes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abana</th>
<th>'men'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abanaro</td>
<td>'young men'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No nanai</td>
<td>'everything'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Napa</td>
<td>'all'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The noun ngarino 'children' is never suffixed and manifests only Clause level tagmemes.

There are three compound nouns which manifest only Clause level object.

| Na-e   | Na-pu
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one-qual</td>
<td>one-qual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 'each other'

| Na-pu   | Ni-na
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one-qual</td>
<td>you-poss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 'each one's'

| Na-pu   | Re-na
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one-qual</td>
<td>you-poss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 'each one's'

Nouns, in a small sub-set of nouns which also manifest the Head tagmeme of Auxiliary Vech Phrase. Nouns, never occur with noun qualitative suffixes when manifesting the Head tagmeme of Auxiliary Verb Phrase.

| Givogi   | 'steal'
|----------|--------|
| Gogo     | 'work'
| Moguvo   | 'anger'
| Dakuvo   | 'spectate'
3.2.5 Verbs

Verbs occur with typical verb affixes and manifest:

(a) The Head tagmeme of Verb Phrases where affixation in most cases is obligatory.

(b) The Lateral tagmeme of Attributive Verb Phrase in which case verb suffixes are obligatorily absent and prefixes are optional.

(c) The Causative tagmeme of Causative Verb Phrase where all suffixes are obligatorily absent but the negative prefix can occur there.

(d) The Potential tagmeme of Imminent Verb Phrase. In this position only imperfect aspect suffixes occur.

(e) The Negative Head of the Negative Verb Phrase.

(f) The Predicate tagmeme of Clauses where affixation is in most cases obligatory

3.2.5.1 Verb Structure. Certain verb affixes maintain intra-clausal relationships whilst others maintain inter-clausal relationships and on this basis verb stems and their affixes are analysed as endocentred and exocentred. Philip Staalsen used these terms in 'Clause Relationships in latsul' submitted to Pacific Linguistics.

The Verb Endocentre is made up of a stem and those Affixes which determine its transitivity or non-transitivity plus those affixes which further separate verbs into indicative, imperative and negative Mood.

The Verb Exocentre contains those suffixes which act as syntactic relators in linking clauses into sentences.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Nonfinite</th>
<th>Syntactic Relaters</th>
<th>Chronolizer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transitive</td>
<td></td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>class i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Final</td>
<td>-na</td>
<td>-hono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vowel</td>
<td>-puho</td>
<td>-ama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ditransitive</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>class ii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intonation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-tine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-gá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intransitive</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>class iii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-ta</td>
<td>-hono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-va?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>class iv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chart of Verb Structure**
3.2.5.1.1 Verb Endocentre = +Verb Theme +Mode +Mood

Verb Theme is transitive, ditransitive, intransitive or stative based on occurrence or non-occurrence of Object tagmeme and the behaviour of the following Mode tagmeme.

Transitive Verb Theme =

Object +Verb Nucleus

\[\text{na}-\] verb stem

\[\text{na}-\] class i

\[A-\]

Rules:

1. Class i verb stems are those which are transitive, i.e., they optionally occur with the object prefix. Not all of these stems occur with the object prefix however, but the distinction is not clear-cut classification but rather appears to be one of semantic relativity. That is, in certain instances the speaker is doubtful that it is proper for the object tagmeme to occur, but in the right semantic context he would accept or reject it immediately.

2. The occurrence of the Object tagmeme fillers are illustrated in this chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>na-</td>
<td>A-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>na-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. In one instance the prefix does not follow the morphophonemic rules. With the stem \( \text{t}_\text{a} \) 'do' the object prefixes take forms \( \text{ne}_-, \text{ne}_-, \text{e}_-\).

Ditransitive Verb Theme =

+Object +Nucleus

\[\text{na}-\] verb stem

\[\text{na}-\] class i;

\[A-\]
Rules:

(1) Verb Stem Class ii are those which obligatorily take the object prefix. Members of this class are:

-NA  'give'
-ngA  'tell'
-nangatA  'sting with nettles'
-ngairA  'teach, show'
-ngizi  'help'
-ngi  'put, provide'

Intransitive Verb Theme =

*Verb Nucleus
verb stem
class iii

Rules:

(1) Verb Stem Class iii never occur with the object prefix.

Stative Verb Theme =

*Verb Nucleus
verb stem
class iv

Rules:

(1) Verb Stem Class iv is identical with verb stem sub-group B3.

(2) When a member of this class is a compound of a transitive verb plus heza (see 2.1.2) the object prefix optionally occurs with it and thus it functions as transitive at clause level. However such a compound acts as a Stative Verb Theme in its relationship to all other verb affixes.

(3) When a stative verb stem occurs without verb suffixes it is neutral as to person and number and has either a present continuative or imperative meaning.

(4) Mode does not occur with the Stative Verb Theme.
Mode is manifested by three continuative morphemes:

-ame (present continuative) and -o (past continuative and remote past) occur with perfect aspect suffixes.

-ho ~ -o (future continuative) occur with imperfect aspect suffixes. -o usually occurs preceding -ke and -ka but -ho can occur there. -ho occurs elsewhere.

Mood is indicative, imperative or negative according to affixation. These are mutually exclusive and occur in combinations with any Theme.

Indicative Mood =

 pouch- +Theme +Mode

Rules:

1. Certuitive tagmem adds certainty or emphasis to an action.

2. Aspect is optional only with the Stative Verb Theme and obligatory with any other Verb Theme.

3. The Verb Exocentre occurs optionally with indicative Mood.

4. Two paradigmatic sets of affixes, perfect aspect and imperfect aspect, occur in the Aspect tagmem, including 10 different suffixes. These morphemes are portmanteau and carry the various categories of subject, person, number and aspect.

Perfect aspect morphemes =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-oho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ngi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-gi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-ha

The perfect aspect is used for any event which has already taken place or is taking place.
Imperfect Aspect Morphemes =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-ma</td>
<td>-paine</td>
<td>-ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ke</td>
<td></td>
<td>-rike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-pane</td>
<td>~</td>
<td>-pa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect aspect indicates that which potentially will happen or which might happen. The form -paine is used only in the inclusive sense - one person talking to another and saying 'let us...'. When an any exclusive idea is intended, morpheme -ka is always used.

-pane and -pa alternate freely preceding the syntactic relator -na, when occurring in the Modifier-Head of a Descriptive Noun Phrase, and when manifesting Time and Location Nominalized Clauses, and when followed by the purpose suffix.

Examples of indicative verb Endocentres:

- ta-ama-ha
do-cont-3s/per
'He is doing it'

- ha-ma-na-ho-pane
cert-3s-est-cont-3s/imp
'He will certainly be giving him'

- so-ho-paine
go-cont-1d/imp
'Let us two be going'

- he-na
be-1s/imp
'I will wait'

Imperative Mood =

**Subject Plural**

- *Imperative*
  - *These* +Mode
    - -tune ~ -tuna ~ -tu (prohibitive)
Rules:

(1) -\(\Lambda\) occurs following Mode and -\(\Pi\) occurs elsewhere.

(2) Only -ho manifests the Mode tagmeme in imperative constructions.

(3) The Verb Exocentre does not occur with imperative constructions.

(4) The final vowel of -\(\text{tune}\) is either e or i.

Examples of Imperative Endocentres:

to-ho-zi
d0-cont-imp
'Keep doing it'

ma-no-tune
\(\exists s\)-give-\(p\)\(\alpha\)
'don't give it to him'

se-i

go-sp

'You all go'

htrs

be

'Wait!'

Negative Classifier =

\(\text{\textit{Negative}}\)
\(\text{\textit{Negative Aspect}}\)
\(\text{\textit{na}}\)
\(\text{\textit{Theme}}\)
\(\text{\textit{-tu}}\)

Rules:

(1) Mode does not occur.

(2) Verb exocentre in general does not occur with Negative Verb Endocentres. The two exceptions are -\(\text{tine}\) (contrafactual) and -\(\text{ga}\) (emphatic).

(3) -\(\text{tu}\) indicates imperfect aspect. Negative constructions without this morpheme are perfect aspect.
Examples of Negative Endocentre:

na-to-tu
go-do-imp
'won't do it'

na-na-na
neg-3s-give
'won't give him'

na-sa
neg-go
'didn't go'

na-ke-tu
neg-be-imp
'won't wait'

Question is indicated by the occurrence of the final vowel in either negative or indicative constructions, with rising intonation on that vowel. This is a question requiring a yes/no answer, not an interrogative type question. The Verb Exocentre does not follow Question tagmeme.

Examples of Negative and Indicative Question Endocentre:

tu-pane?
do-5pl/per
'Will we do it?'

ma-ne-ngi?
5pl-give-2s/per
'Did you give it to him?'

se-ke?
go-2s/imp
'Will you go?'

sa-keza?
neg-be
'Isn't he here?'

3.2.5.1.2 Verb Exocentre is manifested by those syntactic relator suffixes which link Clauses into Sentences. Absence of one of these relators indicates an independent clause with an independent verb in the predicate.
Dependent Verb Exocentre =

+Anticipatory Subject       +Chronolizer
Indicative                 -na             -hoho
Verb                      -paho           -ama
Endocentre

Rules:

(1) -na indicates following clause has a different subject.
    -paho indicates following clause has the same subject.
    This following clause can enlarge or limit its subject
    without the subject being considered different. -hoho
    indicates strict chronological ordering of clauses. -ama
    indicates that the action of the following clause follows
    immediately.

(2) Dependent Verb Exocentre follows indicative Mood.

Examples of Dependent Verb Exocentre:

ta-pane-na
do-3s/imp-chs
'When he does...'

ma-na-ha-paho
3s-give-3pl/per-ss
'They gave it to him and...'

sa-ha-na-ama
go-3s/per-chs-only
'Immediately after he went...'

Non-finite Verb Exocentre =

+Certuitive       +Non-finite +Chronolizer
ha-       +Theme +Node -ta -hoho
-vai

Rules:

(1) -ta means 'and', -vai means continuity of action and time
    overlap with the following predicate.

(2) Node is manifested by -ho and occurs preceding -ta only.
(3) Non-finite Verb Exocentre occurs with Verb Theme only - Mood tagmeme does not occur.

(4) -hoho (chronolizer) occurs only following -ta.

(5) Causative prefix be- optionally occurs preceding the Theme.

(6) Person, number and aspect are not indicated in this construction.

Examples of Non-finite Verb Exocentre:

ta-ta
  dö-and
  'Did and...'

ma-ro-ho-ta
  give-cont-and
  'Giving to him and...'

vo-vai
  get-cto
  'Getting...'

Contrafactural Verb Exocentre =

+Contrafactual

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Verb Endocentre</th>
<th>-tine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Verb Endocentre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules:

(1) -tine 'if' is a suffix which occurs on the indicative Verb Endocentre and Negative Verb Endocentre. Imperfect aspect is not allowed in either of the two Endocentres.

(2) The resulting construction manifests the first tagmeme of a Contrafactual Sentence.
Examples of Contrafactual Verb Exocentre:

\[
\text{ta-ha-tine} \\
\text{do-3s/per-if} \\
'\text{If he had done it...}'
\]

\[
\text{na-sa-tine} \\
\text{neg-go-if} \\
'\text{If he hadn't gone...}'
\]

Emphatic Verb Exocentre =

\[*\text{Emphatic}
\]

\[*\text{Indicative or Negative}
\]

\[\text{Verb Endocentre} \quad \text{ga}
\]

\[*\text{adjective}
\]

Rules:

(1) When this suffix occurs in an independent (sentence final) position it adds emphasis to the verb, or predicate-like tagmeme.

(2) When it occurs in a dependent (non-sentence final) position it adds emphasis to the verb and also implies reason.

Examples of Emphatic Verb Exocentre:

\[
\text{sa-ha-ga} \\
\text{go-5pl/per-en} \\
'They have definitely gone.'
\]

\[
\text{ma-no-ho-ga} \\
\text{3s-give-1s/per-em} \\
'I definitely gave it to him, so...'
\]

3.3 Word classes which are obligatorily suffixed

3.3.1 Demonstratives

Demonstratives are obligatorily suffixed with noun qualitative suffixes. Demonstratives occur:

(a) In the Modifier-Head tagmeme of a Descriptive Noun Phrase.

(b) As Clause level location or time tagmeme in which case they also are suffixed with the syntactic relator appropriate to the tagmeme.
(c) As the emphasis tagmem of Demonstrative Location and Demonstrative Time Phrase.

(d) Demonstratives never occur in the Clause Manner tagmem or in the Auxiliary tagmem of Auxiliary Verb Phrase.

(e) Two Demonstratives occur in the referent tagmem of Quote Clauses. These are ṑpata 'this here' and ṗota 'that'.

Words in this class are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ṑp̕-</td>
<td>'this (seen)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>po-</td>
<td>'that (unseen)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oko-</td>
<td>'that down there (seen)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>akg-</td>
<td>'that up there (seen)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ṉa-</td>
<td>'a certain...'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One Demonstrative Compound occurs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ṡkypo-</td>
<td>'this down there (unseen)'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.2 Verbal nouns

Verbal nouns are verb stems which are nominalized by the noun qualitative suffix -vo. They manifest the Clause level Benefaction and Object tagmemes with appropriate syntactic relations. These words are not commonly used - nominalized verbs are much more frequent in occurrence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ta-vo</td>
<td>'do-qual'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma-na-vo</td>
<td>'giving him'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha-vo-za</td>
<td>'about speaking'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4 Word classes which cannot be classified according to suffixation

3.4.1 Locationals

Locationals are a class of words which manifest:
(a) Clause level Location tagmene.

(b) Location Phrases tagmene.

(c) Modifier-Head of Descriptive Noun Phrase where they obligatorily take noun qualitative suffixes.

There are three sub-classes of Locationals. Sub-class 1 Locationals can be analysed as prefix, bound stem and suffix. Sub-class 2 are other Locationals which do not take prefixes and take only some of the Locational suffixes. Sub-class 3 are compounds of Locationals 1 and Locationals 2.

5.4.1.1 Locational1 =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>First Order</th>
<th>Second Order</th>
<th>Third Order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| a-     | 'down' | ha ~ ka     | ti 'toward'  | ama 'only'
|        | ko-   | 'at'        |              |             |
| 0-     | 'up'  | hananga     | hananga      | hara 'just'
|        | ka-   | 'from'      | 'from'       |             |
|        |       | -ine        |              | ga (emphatic) |
| e-     | 'here' | -ve pe-     | ti 'toward'  | hoho        |
|        |       | 'at close'  |              |             |
|        | 'there' | -po-     | -rume ~ rume | 'side'      |

Rules:

(1) Either a prefix or a suffix must occur.
(2) Prefix is obligatory preceding the suffix -ha.
(3) The prefix intensifies the meaning.
(4) Morphological conditioning of stem variants is as follows:
   - ke occurs unsuffixed with prefix a-
   - ka- occurs with suffixes
   - ve occurs unsuffixed with prefix e-
   - pe- occurs with suffixes
   - po- alternates with pe- preceding suffix -rume
(5) Morphological conditioning of suffixes is as follows:
-\text{rume} occurs following \text{ko-} and \text{pe-}
-\text{rome} occurs following \text{pe-}
Both occur following \text{ka-}
-\text{ha} and -\text{ka} alternate following \text{ope-}

(6) The meaning of these locationals is usually the sum of the parts but the following combinations are idiomatic.
\text{kohati} 'down inside'
\text{kahati} 'up inside'

(7) Usage of these words is relative to the speaker's position and to context. \text{koine} 'down here' may refer to a few feet or several miles.

(8) Second order suffix -\text{ti} occurs only following -\text{ha} and -\text{rume} and -\text{hananga} occurs following -\text{ine}, -\text{rume} and -\text{ti}.

\text{o-ka-ine} down-down-close
'down here close'

\text{a-ka-rume} up-up-side
'up across the other side'

\text{ka-ti} up-toward
'up there'

\text{e-pe-ka} here-here-at
'here'

\text{t-pe-rume} here-there-side
'this side there'

3.4.1.2 Locationals. Some of these are obligatorily suffixed and some are not.

(1) Only suffixes -\text{ha} 'at', -\text{hananga} 'from' and -\text{ti} 'toward' occur obligatorily.
3.4.1.3 Locationals are compounds of 2 or 3 nuclei which are stems or roots from Locational 1 or Locational 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locationals 3:</th>
<th>Location suffixes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oka- 'down'</td>
<td>de- 'up'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aka- 'up'</td>
<td>iri- 'down'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka- 'up'</td>
<td>ngaara- 'above'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nga- 'up'</td>
<td>aka- 'down'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ega- 'down'</td>
<td>aka- 'cp'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules:

1. Note that some Nucleus 2 fillers are Locational stems plus or minus prefix, and that oga- and aga- are from the Locational 2 set.
2. Nucleus 2 contains three Locational stems.
3. Locationals occur as Nucleus 3, and these act the same in these compounds in relation to suffixes as described under 3.4.1.1. The Demonstrative eput 'this' also occurs as Nucleus 3.
(4) All combinations do not occur in that the filler of Nucleus₁ and Nucleus₂ cannot be the same, i.e. aka-aka does not occur. 
(5) Nucleus 1, 2 and 3, 1 and 2, or 1 and 5 can co-occur. 
(6) Second and third order suffixes do not occur.

d-de-ak-e
"close down here"
ka-de-ak-e
"up above there"
de-a-ka-ti
"to up there"
og-iri-ti
"to a long way down below"
tiri-epata
"down this"
"down below here"

3.4.2 Temporals

Temporal overlap with Locationals somewhat in that the suffixes -ka ~ 'at' and -ti 'toward' occur and in that kof 'down' and kati 'up' occur in Temporal Phrases meaning 'before' and 'after'. All Temporals manifest:

(1) Time Phrase tagsenee.

(2) Clause level Time tagsenee.

haapats
"yesterday"
vatame
"before"
hapometai
"afternoon"
ziirek meval
"morning"
lop gitumo
"midnight"
manoga
"first"
orah rezaaha
"all the time"
tokaeti  'later'
terieval  'tomorrow, the next day'
gitaha    'a little while later'
gitahara  'a little while before'
hapoka    'a while ago'
naraha    'a certain time'
narahanu  'early in the morning'
haopatafe  'midnight'
satiana   'sometime'

Temporal adverbs are a small subset of Temporals which occur in the Modifier-Head tagmeme of a Descriptive Noun Phrase in which case they obligatorily take noun qualitative suffixes.

vatano   'before'
mamoga   'first'
tokaeti  'later'

3.4.3 Adverbs

Adverbs expound only the Clause level Manner tagmeme and optionally take suffixes -ama 'only' or -hara 'just'. No other affixation is permitted and in this class two words occur without these suffixes. These are:

zuam      'quickly'
am ~ amun  'also'

Most of the remaining words in this class occur with either -ama or -hara but not both.

rahorag-ama  'almost only'
maota-hara   'again just'
daedae-ama    'carefully only'

3.4.4 Auxiliaries

Auxiliaries occur only in the Auxiliary and Periphrastic Verb Phrases. They are divided into 3 groups. Auxiliaries, occur optionally suffixed with -ama or -hara. Some of these are reduplicating forms which have a meaning of repeated action.

alipui  'step over'
der gup   'conspire'
etaet  'awake'
kupi  'unseeing'
dodo  'shake, jiggle'
emam  'part'
peiram  'something'
gilow  'pickaback'
toto  'kiss'
nga:  'dry, empty'
ritou  'pass'
in valavi  'mixed up'
ale  'light'
put put  'stitch'
aro  'dry bake'
au  'open'
seri  'afraid'

Auxiliary, occurs only in the Head, tagmeme of Periphrastic Verb Phrase. Only hara 'speak' occurs in the following Head, tagmeme. The suffix hara 'just' occurs with these words which all indicate some kind of sound.

vope  'whistie'
bi:pi:  'squawk'
si  'kiss'
ngutu  'grunt'
koi  'howl'
hel  'scream'
au  'bark'

Auxiliaries, occur in Periphrastic Verb Phrase, with hara 'speak' in the following tagmeme but the meaning of speak is lost and all meaning is carried by the Auxiliary, word, none of which have meanings related to sound. Only tepe 'tighten' occurs with -hara 'just'. The other members of this group take no suffixation.
tepe  'tighten'
pog  'jump'
poro  'climb'
pak  'take off'
poru    'run'
gara   'finish'
4. PHRASES

4.0 Introduction

A Phrase is a 'class of syntagmemes of a hierarchical order ranking above such syntagmemes as the word and stem and below such syntagmemes as the clause and sentence'.

Kunimaipa Phrases show considerable variety of internal structure and obligatorily consist of two words (or optionally more) and manifest tagmemes in Phrases, Clauses and Sentence periphery. Phrases differ from Clauses and Sentences in their manner expansion and the tagmemes which occur.

Phrase types are separated because of different nuclear and peripheral tagmemes, different fillers of similar slots and different occurrence possibilities.

Most Noun Phrases have been described in 'Kunimaipa Nominals'. This section includes verb, location, time and pronoun phrases and three additional Noun Phrases.

4.1 Verb phrases

Verb Phrases manifest Clause level Predicate tagmemes. Following are descriptions of Attributive, Causative, Auxiliary, Periphrastic, Imminent and Negative Verb Phrases.

Verb Phrases are separated because of different nuclear tagmemes and different items manifesting these tagmemes. The Clause level Manner tagmemes is not included as part of the Verb Phrase because it frequently occurs in the first part of the clause, separate from the predicate which usually occurs clause final.

4.1.1 Attributive

Attributive Verb Phrase consists of two obligatory tagmemes both of which are of equal importance. The Lateral tagmemes is optionally repeated up to four times.

Attributive Verb Phrase =
\[ +\text{Lateral}^{1-4} +\text{dead} \]

verb theme\[ +\text{ad} \]

Auxiliary Verb Phrase
Periphrastic Verb Phrase
Rules:
(1) The actions of the two tagmemes are closely linked and sometimes are viewed as only one actor. Because of this close linking some verb themes occurring in the attributive construction develop an idiomatic meaning different from the meaning which is deductible from their separate meanings.

(2) No suffixation occurs on the fillers of the Lateral tagmememe. A large number of different themes occur in this position, however the most frequent one is va 'get'.

(3) The filler of the Head tagmememe carries the suffixation for the whole construction.

(4) An interesting example of the close union between parts of the Attributive Verb Phrase is found in the occurrence of the negative prefix on the first Lateral filler of the Phrase while the negative aspect suffix occurs on the Head tagmememe filler. This lends support to an alternate analysis which considers these constructions as consisting of compounded stems on the word level. Additional support comes with one syllable CV stems, these constructions follow phonological rules which normally apply to single phonological words. There are three problems pertaining to this alternate: (1) discontinuous examples of the construction have been observed in free text; (2) stems of syllable patterns other than CV pattern do not follow phonological rules which would make it possible to consider them single phonological words; (3) numerous examples have been found in which more than one lateral tagmememe occurs, and it would seem unlikely to find compounding on such a grand scale.

va sa-ha
get go-3s/per
'He took it.'

mena vete-ha
kill leave-3s/per
'He killed and threw it away.'

meza vizo-ha
step put-1s/imp
'I will bend it.'

su ema to-o-ha
go come do-cont-3pl/per
'They were coming and going.'
na-va so-tu
neg-get go-negasp
'Won't take it.'

hona sa hare ema to-o-ha
go away go come across come do-cont-3s/per
'He kept on going back and forth.'

ha-va sa ama ha
cert-get go-cont-xpl/per
'They are certainly taking it.'

na-va teza vete-tu
neg-get take off leave-negasp
'Won't take off and discard it.'

4.1.2 Causative

Causative Verb Phrase consists of three obligatory tagmemes. The Modifier tagmeme gives the main meaning to the phrase.

Causative Verb Phrase =
+Causative +Modifier +Head
va 'get' adjective₁ vati 'make'
na 'eat' adjective₂
mena 'kill' auxiliary

Rules:

(1) Causative slot indicates the method of causation and only three verb themes occur here. No suffixes occur but negative prefix can occur.

(2) Modifier tagmeme indicates the state which is caused. Because of the semantics not all auxiliaries and adjectives occur. The following is a list of what has been observed.

keta 'strong'
goe 'small'
hori 'bad'
tohotoho 'lightweight'
tina 'good'
aho 'big'
vono 'nothing'
homogai 'heavy'
hova 'preparation'
teki 'short'
rotap 'true'
izé 'hidden'

(3) Only vata 'make' manifests the Head tagmeme and this word carries the suffixation applying to the whole construction.

va vono vata-ha get nothing make-3s/per
'He destroyed it.'

na vono vata-ha eat nothing make-3pl/per
'They ate it all.'

mena vono vata-ha KIIH nothing make-3s/per
'He annihilated them.'

va hova vata-ha get preparation make-3s/per
'He made it ready.'

na-v3 izé vato-tu neg-get hidden make-negasp
'He won't cause it to be hidden.'

mena vono ha-vatr-gi KIIH nothing cert-make-2pl/per
'You certainly annihilated them.'

4.1.3 Auxiliary

Auxiliary Verb Phrase consists of an obligatory Auxiliary tagmeme followed by a Head tagmeme optionally separated by Location tagmeme.
Auxiliary Verb Phrase =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auxiliary₁</td>
<td>eve 'here'</td>
<td>ta 'do'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective₂</td>
<td>oke 'there'</td>
<td>here 'be'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective₃</td>
<td>rava 'become'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun₂</td>
<td>vata 'male'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative</td>
<td>oraeza 'lies'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive N.P.</td>
<td>na 'eat'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meta 'kill'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tusa 'take off'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ema 'come'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules:

1. Some of the words which manifest the Auxiliary do not occur with suffixes -ama 'only' and -hara 'just' but the majority of them do. Other suffixes do not occur.

2. Locationals eve 'here' and oke 'there' are the only locationals which manifest Location tagmeme.

3. Auxiliary carries most of the meaning of the phrase and the Head carries all the suffixation.

4. The words which manifest the Auxiliary tagmeme typically occur with one particular verb in the Head, but some words occur with up to four different verbs with some change of meaning occurring. The verb which most commonly manifests the Head is ta 'do'.

5. A Possessive Noun Phrase manifesting the Auxiliary tagmeme always has zut 'likeness' manifesting the Possessed-Head tagmeme. This indicates verbal comparison.

- dei dei ta-ha shake do-3s/per
  'He shook it.'
- roko roko ema-ha boil cone-3s/per
  'It boiled.'
ale teza-ha
light open-3s/per
'It dawned.'

aro to-ma
bake do-1s/imp
'I will bake it.'

kakana ta-ha
pain do-3s/per
'It pained.'
dapa-hara eve mena-ha
dance-just here hit-3s/per
'He only danced here.'

ngai rava-ha
dry become-3s/per
'It dried.'

ngai vata-ha
dry make-3pl/per
'They dried it.'

ngai oraeza
dry lies
'It is empty.'
yoloyu-za zut na-ma-ha
pig-poss like eat-cont-3s/per
'He eats like a pig.'

4.1.4 Periphrastic

Periphrastic Verb Phrases have two obligatory Heads, the first one carries the meaning and the second one carries the inflection for the Phrase. Only hatz 'speak' expounds the second Head and thus Periphrastic Phrases differ from the Auxiliary Verb Phrase where the range of fillers of the Head is wider. In addition the Periphrastic Phrase has two Heads and the Auxiliary Phrase has an Auxiliary and a Head.

Periphrastic Verb Phrase, is the means of indicating the kind of noise spoken.
Periphrastic Verb Phrase

\[ +\text{Head}_1 +\text{Head}_2 \]
\[ \text{auxiliary}_2 \hspace{1cm} \text{hara} \ 'speak' \]

Rules:

(1) Auxiliary\(_2\) words indicate the kind of noise spoken.

(2) Both tagmemes add meaning to the Phrase.

(3) The only suffix which occurs on the Head\(_1\) tagmememe filler is -hara 'just'.

(4) Some auxiliaries, are optionally reduplicated. This indicates continuance of sound.

\begin{itemize}
  \item vope \hspace{1cm} hao-ma
  \hspace{1cm} \text{whistle} \hspace{1cm} \text{imp}
  \hspace{1cm} 'I will whistle.'
  \item ngot ngot \hspace{1cm} ha-hu
  \hspace{1cm} \text{grunt} \hspace{1cm} \text{speck-3s/per}
  \hspace{1cm} 'He was grunting.'
  \item si \hspace{1cm} ha-am-ha
  \hspace{1cm} \text{biss} \hspace{1cm} \text{speck-cont-3pl/per}
  \hspace{1cm} 'They are hissing.'
\end{itemize}

Periphrastic Verb Phrase

\[ +\text{Head} +\text{Head} \]
\[ \text{auxiliary}_3 \hspace{1cm} \text{hara} \ 'speak' \]

Rules:

(1) All meaning is carried by the auxiliary in Head\(_1\).

(2) The meaning of 'speak' is completely lost but this verb carries suffixation for the whole phrase.

(3) Only one auxiliary occurs with a suffix and that is tepe 'tighten' which occurs with -hara 'just'.

\begin{itemize}
  \item ngep \hspace{1cm} hara
  \hspace{1cm} \text{jump speak}
  \hspace{1cm} 'Jump!'\end{itemize}
poru ha-ma-ha
run speak-cont-3s/per
‘He is running.’

tepa-hara ha-ngi
tighten-just speak-2s/per
‘You pulled it too tight.’
pak ha-ha
take off speak-3s/per
‘It came off.’

4.1.5 Inminent

Inminent Verb Phrase has two obligatory taqmemes optionally separated by the Emphasis tajmeme.

Inminent Verb Phrase =

+Inminent Head +Emphasizer +Head
verb
eve ‘here’
Attributive V.P.
oko ‘there’
Causative V.P.
Auxiliary V.P.
Periphrastic V.P.

-zo

Rules:

(1) The verb or Phrase manifesting the Inminent Head is always imperfect aspect (non-negative) and carries all the meaning of the Phrase. The suffix -za follows the imperfect aspect suffix.

(2) Only te ‘do’ occurs as the Head and it is always perfect aspect.

(3) The Subject/person and number of the two tajmemes must agree.

(4) Only indicative Mood occurs in this phrase.

(5) The Emphasizer slot, manifested by the locationals eve ‘here’ and oke ‘there’, occasionally occurs.
4.1.6 Negative

Negative Verb Phrase is:

(1) a device for linking a negative statement to the following clause in a sentence. Since certain of the Verb Exocentre do not occur with the Negative Endocentre this phrase must be used to combine the Exocentre with the Negative Endocentre.

(2) a device for indicating the continuance of a negative action since the continuative does not go with a Negative Endocentre.

Negative Verb Phrase = *Negative Head + Head

verb Causative Verb Phrase ta 'do'

Attributive Verb Phrase hera 'be'

Auxiliary Verb Phrase

Neg Verb Endocentre

Rules:

(1) The filler of the Negative Head must be a negative form.

(2) Only two verbs occur as the Head and these are always indicative Mood and thus can occur with the Verb Exocentre.
4.2 Pronoun phrases

There are four Pronoun Phrases: Specifier, Accompaniment, Appositional and Intensive.

4.2.1 Specifier

Specifier Pronoun Phrase consists of a Head filled by a plural pronoun and a Specifier which adds detail by indicating who is included in the preceding pronoun.

Specifier Pronoun Phrase =

+Head plural pronoun noun

Noun Phrase

Rules:

(1) Pronoun suffixes do not occur with pronouns manifesting the Head tagmeme.

(2) The Head tagmeme includes one or two more people than the Specifier tagmeme indicates.

paru ngari-pu
they girl-qual
'he and the girl'
rari aban epo-pu
we(incl) man this-qual
'you and I and this man'

rej ne-ma ngari-pu
we(excl) I-poss girl-qual
'my daughter and I'

4.2.2 Accompaniment

Accompaniment Pronoun Phrase consists of two obligatory items. The Accompaniment tagmeme indicates who is included in the following pronoun. This phrase differs from Specifier Pronoun Phrase in the different positioning of the Head tagmeme, in the occurrence versus non-occurrence of the suffix -nanga 'with', and in the pronoun suffix restrictions of Specifier Pronoun Phrase which do not occur in Accompaniment Pronoun Phrase.

Accompaniment Pronoun Phrase =

+Accompaniment
+noun
Noun Phrase
+Head
plural pronoun

-nanga

Rules:

(1) Any filler of Accompaniment tagmeme must be suffixed with -nanga 'with'.

(2) There are no pronoun suffix restrictions in the Head tagmeme.

(3) Whilst the internal structure of Specifier and Accompaniment Pronoun Phrases differ, the meaning is the same and any Specifier Pronoun Phrase readily transforms into an Accompaniment Pronoun Phrase and vice versa. For example:

ne-ma ro-pu-nanga rej-pl
I-poss boy-qual-with we(excl)-two
'I with my son'

transforms into

rej ne-ma ro-pu
we(excl) I-poss boy-qual
'my son and I'
4.2.3 Appositional

Appositional Pronoun Phrase has two obligatory tagmemes, the Head and the Apposition both of which refer to the same person or persons.

Appositional Pronoun Phrase =

<Head Apposition
pronoun noun

Descriptive Noun Phrase
Possessive Noun Phrase
Coordinate Noun Phrase

Rules:

1) First order pronoun suffixes optionally occur with the pronoun.

2) Tagmemes order is reversible.

si ro-pu he boy-qual
'he, the boy'

paru bp-ri they this-qual
'they, those ones'

paru Tomari-ra anga-pu-ra agara-ngariv they Thomas-and wife-qual-and child-qual
'Thomas and his wife and two children, they'

rej na-ri we(incl) certain-qual
'certain ones, we'
Ramanai Vanu paru-pi
Ramanai Vanu they-two
'they two, Ramanai and Vanu'

4.2.4 Intensifier

Intensifier Pronoun Phrase is manifested by a Head plus Intensi-
 fier.

Intensifier Pronoun Phrase =

+Head +Intensifier
pronoun pronoun
Specifier
Pronoun Phrase -mau

Rules:

(1) Any pronoun manifesting the Intensifier tagmeme has the
pronoun intensifier suffix -mau.

(2) Both tagmemes agree in person and number.

ne ne-mau-ho
'I myself'

paru ngari-pu paru-pi-mau
they girl-qual they-two-int
'he and the girl themselves'

4.3 Location phrases

There are three Location Phrases: Location, Apposition Location,
and Demonstrative location.

4.3.1 Location

Location Phrase consists of two Location tagmemes.

Location Phrase =

+Location +location^n=i-2
any Locational any Locational
App. Loc. Phrase
Rules:

(1) Locationals 1, 2 or 3 occur either Location tagmemes.
(2) The two Location tagmemes must agree concerning up or down.
(3) The only limitation on co-occurrence is that the same word does not occur in both tagmemes.
(4) Locational 2 optionally repeats once.

\[ \text{agarr} \quad \text{ake} \\
\text{up \ there \ up} \\
\text{along \ way \ up \ there} \\
\text{ko-linc} \quad \text{epu-ta} \\
\text{down-close \ this-qual} \\
\text{down \ close \ here} \\
\text{ko-ti} \quad \text{o-ko-ti} \quad \text{e-pe-linc} \\
\text{down-toward \ down-down-toward \ here-here-close} \\
\text{close \ by \ down \ there} \]

4.3.2 Apposition

Apposition Location Phrase consists of Location plus Apposition. Apposition Location Phrase =

\[ +\text{Location} \quad +\text{Apposition}_{n=1-2} \]
any Locational Possessive N.P.
Location Phrase Descriptive N.P.
noun place name

Rules:

(1) A Possessive Noun Phrase manifesting Apposition has a locational as its possessed-Head. Any other filler of the Apposition must be suffixed with one of the following location suffixes: -nga ~-ka 'at', -ti 'toward' or -hananga ~
kananga 'from'. The morphophonemic alternation of these suffixes is given in detail in 'Kunimaipa Nominals'.
(2) The Location and Apposition always refer to the same place.
(3) The Apposition is optionally repeated once.
4.3.3 Demonstrative

Demonstrative Location Phrase is manifested by Location plus Emphasis.

Demonstrative Location Phrase =

  *Location
  Possessive Noun Phrase
  Descriptive Noun Phrase
  Apposition Location Phrase
  Clause
  Series Sentence

*Emphasis
  poeka 'that at'

Rules:

(1) Any phrase occurring as Location is suffixed with -ha~-ka 'at' or has a locational in the final tagmeme of the embedding Phrase. Clauses, and sentences occurring there are not suffixed in this way, nor do they have a locational in the final tagmeme.

ive-ri-za totoi po-e-ka
river-qual-poss close that-qual-at
'near the river, there'
vetelga heza po-e-ka
lazy by that-qual-at
'where they are lazy'

lam zei-make dema-ha-na heza po-e-ka
sickness house-qual build-Spi/per-chs be that-qual-at
'there where they built the aid post'

paru-ma ngarava-ta-ka heza po-e-ka
they-pos centre-qual-at that-qual-at
'there, in their midst'

4.4 Time phrases

There are two Time Phrases, Apposition Time Phrase and Demonstrative Time Phrase.

4.4.1 Apposition

Apposition Time Phrase has two obligatory tagmemes, Time and Apposition.

Apposition Time Phrase =

+Time
    temporal
temporal
Nominalized Location Clause
    day name
date

+Apposition
Nominalized Time Clause
Nominalized Time Clause

Rules:

(1) Time is manifested by any temporal.

(2) Apposition is manifested by any day or month name, or date.

(3) Time and Apposition both refer to the same time.

haopata February 18
yesterday February 18
'yesterday the 18th of February'

zeireval Tude
tomorrow Tuesday
'tomorrow Tuesday'
pi gøe-ra-ha anja-pu nav-va-ra-ha
he small-qual-at wife-qual neg-get-qual-at
'when he was young, when he did not have a wife'

manoga 1960
First 1960
'before in 1960'
haqata zëirez neval
yesterday morning

4.4.2 Demonstrative

Demonstrative Time Phrase is manifested by two obligatory tagmemes, Time and Emphasis.

Demonstrative Time Phrase =
+Time +Emphasis
temporal poraha 'that at'
day name

Apposition Time Phrase
Clause
Series Sentence

zëireval Tude po-ra-ha
tomorrow Tuesday that-qual-at
'tomorrow Tuesday, at that time'
gipito-tu vomo rava-pane po-ra-ha
food-qual nothing become-35/1mp that-qual-at
'when the food is finished, at that time'
abana-pu Garaina ra-ha po-ra-ha
man-qual Garaina go-35/1mp that-qual-at
'when the man went to Garaina, then'

4.5 Noun phrases

There are three Noun Phrases described here, Included Clause Noun Phrase, Accompaniment Noun Phrase and Resemblance Noun Phrase.

4.5.1 Included clause

Included Clause Noun Phrase has two obligatory tagmemes, Modifier and Head.
Included Clause Noun Phrase =

+Modifier
Clause
Series Sentence

+Head
demonstrative
noun
Descriptive Noun Phrase

Rules:

(1) The relationship between the two obligatory tagmemes is
attributive but the internal structure differs from Descrip-
tive Noun Phrase as described in Kunimaipa Nominals.

(2) This Phrase type tends to be long because the potential for
expansion of the Modifier tagmeme is great.

(3) This Noun Phrase optionally manifests the Possessed-Head
tagmeme of the Possessive Phrase or the Modifier-Head tagmeme
of the Descriptive Noun Phrase.

(4) Any Clause or Sentence manifesting the Modifier tagmeme is
not nominalized.

(5) Any filler of the Head tagmeme must have noun qualitative
suffixes on its final word.

ngâri-ro ema-ta ni-na morega ne-ta-ama-ha
children come-and you-in false 2s-do-cont-3p/per
po-vo
that-qual
'the trick that the children are coming and playing on you'

koeka-si va-ta he-ha tapu-pu
hat-qual get-and be-3s/per same-qual
'the same one who had the hat'

The following is an example of this Phrase type embedded in a Descrip-
tive Noun Phrase.

Head: aban Modified-Head: koeka-si-laro ma-na-ha
man
hat-qual-two 3pl-give-3s/per
po-ngariv
that-two
'the two men who were given the two hats'
The following is an example of this Phrase type embedded in a Possessive Phrase.

Possessor: ne-ma papa-pu-za
I-posss father-qual-poss

Possessed Head: nga-na ha ngeti-vo
ls-tell-3s/per story-qual

'the story that my father told me'

4.5.2 Accompaniment

Accompaniment Noun Phrase has one obligatory tagmeme, the Head, followed by an optional tagmeme the Accompaniment. This Phrase type differs from Accompaniment Pronoun Phrase in that the fillers of both tagmemes differ and in that the tagsmeme order is reversed and in that the number of obligatory tagmemes is different.

Accompaniment Noun Phrase =
+Head =Accompaniment
demonstrative	noun
pronoun
Noun Phrase
-nanga

Rules:

(1) Any filler of the Head tagmeme is suffixed with -nanga 'with'.

(2) honevo and karara 'together' have the same meaning in this Phrase although their meaning differs in other contexts.

(3) This Phrase has accompaniment meaning, and never means instrument.

gipizo-nanga honevo
food with together
'with the food'

pe-vo-nanga karara
that-qual-with together
'with that thing'
4.5.3 Resemblance

A Resemblance Noun Phrase has two obligatory tagmemes and is the means for indicating resemblance between two items.

Resemblance Noun Phrase =

+Resemblance Possessive Noun Phrase
   +Head
   Descriptive Noun Phrase
   noun
   adjective
   zuta
   zuaitsa

Rules:

1. Any Possessive Noun Phrase which manifests Resemblance has zuta ~ zuaitsa 'likeness' as its Possessed-Head tagmeme. These two variations indicate dialect.

2. Resemblance Noun Phrase manifests only Clause level Subject or Object and does not embed in any other Noun Phrase.

  ide-pu-za zuta vera-angi
  bird-qual-poss likeness wing-qual
  'wings like a bird's (wings)'

  ivngere-ngi-za zuta botoro-angi
  water gourd-qual-poss likeness bottle-qual
  'bottles like water-gourds'

  zi-nede-za zuta toko
  tree-qual-poss likeness straight
  'straight like a tree'
ni-ma apare raya-vo-ka sa-me-ngi-vo-za
you-posse up there ridge-qual-at go-cont-2s/per-qual-pos
zuaita ne-ma nono-vo
likeness t-posse road-qual

' in the same way you are going around up there in the mountains, this is my road... '
5. CLAUSES

5.0 Introduction

The clause is "class of syntagmeme of a median hierarchical order ranking above such syntagmeme as the Phrase and word, and below such syntagmeme as the Sentence and discourse".

The clause in Kuniamaipa is the level above the phrase and below the sentence. A clause is defined as a grammatical unit which has one and only one predicate (or predicate like tagmeme) manifested by a verb or verb phrase. A clause fills slots on the sentence, clause and phrase levels.

The clause section describes contrastive clause structure and nuclear tagmemes, peripheral tagmemes (including nominalized clauses) and tagmeme order. Nominalized clauses are partially described in 'Kuniamaipa Nominals'.

Basic contrastive clause types are transitive, ditransitive, intransitive, stative, equational and existential. This division is made on the basis of occurrence or non-occurrence of the Predicate, the occurrence in the Predicate of different verb endocentres, different nuclear tagmeme and different peripheral tagmeme. Transitive, Ditransitive and Intransitive Clauses are independent, dependent, or non-finite depending on their contrastive occurrence in tagmemes of the sentence, which is indicated by the occurrence of the Verb Exocentre.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contrastive Clause Types</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
<th>Ditransitive</th>
<th>Intransitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transitive</td>
<td>±Periphery</td>
<td>±Object/Indirect</td>
<td>±Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di transitive</td>
<td>±Periphery</td>
<td>±Indirect Object</td>
<td>±Object/Indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intransitive</td>
<td>±Periphery</td>
<td>±Object</td>
<td>±Transitive Predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existential</td>
<td>±Limited Periphery</td>
<td>±Topic</td>
<td>±Existential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative</td>
<td>±Periphery</td>
<td>±Subject</td>
<td>±Stative Predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equational</td>
<td>±Limited Periphery</td>
<td>±Topic</td>
<td>±Equational Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-quote</td>
<td>±Limited Periphery</td>
<td>±Referent</td>
<td>±Predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-quote</td>
<td>No Periphery</td>
<td>±Referent</td>
<td>±Predicate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1 Clause structures

In the following clause descriptions only nuclear tagmemes will be indicated in the bidimensional arrays.

5.1.1 Transitive

Transitive Clause has 2 nuclear tagmemes, Predicate and Object, but only the Predicate is obligatory.

Transitive Clause =

+Object/Indirect Object +Predicate
+transitive verb
+ditransitive verb

Rules:

(1) Peripheral tagmemes which occur are Subject, Time, Location, Purpose, Reason, Instrument/Accompaniment, Manner, and Benefaction.

(2) There are three ditransitive verbs which optionally take an object but do not occur with an indirect object and so manifest the Predicate of a Transitive Clause. These are:

-\textit{ngizA} 'help'
-\textit{ngatA} 'sting with nettles'
-\textit{nge} 'put, provide'

(3) The verb \textit{ta} 'do' occurs with either an indirect object or an object but not both.

(4) The verb \textit{hatete} 'hear' occurs only with an indirect object.

(5) A Verb Phrase in the Predicate must be transitive. This does not necessarily mean that the verb itself is transitive but that the additional phrase tagmemes add to the verb in such a way as to allow it to take an object.

(6) Object or Indirect Object occur but do not co-occur. Indirect Object is always suffixed with -\textit{na} (indirect object).

(7) The verb \textit{ete} 'see' occurs only with an indirect object.
P: dema-ha
build-3s/per
'He built.'

Su: rii T: peteve O: kooka-si P: ve-pi
we(exc) today hat-qual get-2pl/per
'Today we got a hat.'

I/A: gipizo-nanga P: ngado-o-ha
food-with cook-cont-3s/per
'She cooked it with the vegetables.'

Su: anga-ngarivi Dorisi-ra Ilangi paru-pi
women-two Boris-and Elaine they-two

L: Amerika-ta-kananga Pu: rei-pl Gazilli
America-qual-from we(exc)-two Gazilli
abana angara abo-za gogo-vo ta-pane-za
people-poss work-qual do-5pl/imp-pur

Pu: onga-pu-za ngoti-vo a-agga-pane-za ma
Cod-qual-poss story-qual like-tell-3pl/imp-pu and

O: onga-pu-za ngoti-vo sara ha-pane
Cod-qual-poss story-qual finish-3pl/imp
'The two women, Doris and Elaine, (came) from America to
do the Gazilli people's work and to tell us God's talk
and they will finish God's talk.'

5.1.2 Ditransitive

Ditransitive Clause has three nuclear items, Predicate, Object and Indirect Object. Of these only Predicate is obligatory.

Ditransitive Clause =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indirect Object</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>+Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pronoun</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
<td>ditransitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>noun</td>
<td>Verb Phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun Phrase</td>
<td>Noun Phrase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-na</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules:

1. Peripheral tagmemes are the same as for Transitive Clause.
(2) Of the six verbs classified as ditransitive only the following three occur in Ditransitive Clause.

-na 'give'
-ngra 'tell'
-ngaira 'show'

(3) Any Verb Phrase manifesting Predicate must contain a ditransitive verb as listed above. Causative and Periphrastic Verb Phrases do not occur.

(4) Indirect Object is always suffixed with -na (indirect object).

P: ma-nga-na
3s-tell-3s/per
'The told him.'

T: tokaet M: naut IO. lili-1a Dorisi-na
later again Elaine-and Doris-lo
0: epa-ra P: ma-nga-ha
this-qual Spl-tell-3s/per
'Later he told it to Doris and Elaine again.'

Su: ne 0: volo na-ru P: ura a-ro-na
I pig certain-qual hit 2pl-give-1s/imp
'I will kill a pig and give it to you.'

Su: Rauke-ra Musania paru-pi Pu: ava-si-za
Rauks-and Musania they-two garden-qual-poss
kiriza-vo ta-pane-za P: po-yo-za
payment-qual do-Spl/imp-per this-qual-for
P: na-na-ha
3s-give-3pl/per
'Rauks and Musania gave it to him as a payment for the garden work.'

IO: abah-a-ru-na 0: ngerti-vo P: ma-nga-ha
3s-qual-1o story-qual 3s-teil-3pl/per
'They tied the man the story.'

5.1.3 Intransitive

Intransitive Clause has one nuclear tagname, the Predicate, which is obligatory. Object and Indirect Object never occur.
Intransitive Clause =

+Predicate
intransitive verb
stative verb
Verb Phrase

Rules:

(1) Peripheral items are the same as for Transitive Clause.

(2) Any Verb Phrase in the Predicate must be intransitive, thus Causative Verb Phrase does not occur, and very few occurrences of Auxiliary Verb Phrase are intransitive.

(3) Only stative verbs which are intransitive occur, i.e. compounds of transitive verb and stative verb do not occur.

Su: go-ngari-vi P: loka-ha
that-two enter-3pl/per
'Those two went in.'

Pu: iti-have vs-ke-zu L: iye-ri-ha
firewood-qual get-2s/imp-pu river-qual-at
P: se-he
go-2f/imp
'You will go to the river to get firewood.'

T: haopata Su: be L: Garaina P: so-uo
yesterday T Garaina go-1m/per
'Yesterday I went to Garaina.'

T: vaga-mo Su: rei-ma mimi-holo M: hori-ama
before we(excl)-poss ancestor-qual bad-only
P: he-ha
be-3pl/per
'Before our ancestors lived badly.'

1.1.4 Existential

Existential Clause has two obligatory nuclear tags: Topic and Existential.
Existential Clause =

<Topic
noun₁
noun₂
adjective
Noun Phrase
Nominalized Clause

<Existential
oko 'there'
eve 'here'

Rules:

(1) Nous, manifesting Topic tagmemes always occur with noun qualitative suffixes but with noun₂ these suffixes are optional. However, the occurrence of non-occurrence of noun suffixes usually indicates a change of focus. Noun suffixes usually show the items manifesting the state indicated by the particular noun whereas the lack of such suffixes indicates the state itself.

(2) oke 'there' and eve 'here' are locationals which also manifest Clause level Location tagmemes.

(3) The Possessed-Head of a Possessive Noun Phrase manifesting the Topic is optionally deleted.

(4) The tagmemes order is optionally reversed but this is rare.

(5) Nominalized Clause is either Location Nominalized Clause or a Manner Nominalized Clause.

(6) An Existential Clause occasionally occurs as the Object in a clause which has a verb of saying or thinking in the Predicate.

(7) Peripheral tagmemes which occur are Location, Time and Purpose. These occur preceding the Topic and only one optionally occurs.

To: morega-pu E: oke
false-qua? there
'That person is a trickster.'

To: morega E: oke
false there
'That is false.'
To: gogo-vo ta-ama-ha-e-ka E: eve
work-qual do-cont-3pl/per-qual-at
'this is where they are working.'

To: rei-na te-gi-ta E: oke
we(excl)-poss do-1pl/per-qual
'that is what we did.'

L: iri-oke To: na-pu-ra anga-ra ngariro-ra
down-down certain-qual-and wife-and children-pos
E: oke
there
'down there is a certain one and his wife and children's'

5.1.5 Stative

Stative Clause has two obligatory nuclear tagmemes, Subject and Pro-predicate.

Stative Clause =

*Subject
pronoun
noun
Noun Phrase

*Pro-predicate
adjective

Roles:

(1) This clause type readily transforms to an Intransitive or Transitive clause by the addition of a Predicate in which case the Pro-predicate and Predicate function as an Auxiliary Verb Phrase.

So: ne PP: unumu
T ignorant
'I don't know.'

transforms to:

Su: no P: unumu to-bo
T ignorant do-1s/per
'I don't know.'

(2) Tagmemes order is occasionally reversed.

(3) Adjective are never suffixed in this position.
(4) Peripheral tagmemes which occur are Manner, Indirect Object, Benefaction, Object, Time, Purpose, and Location. These usually precede the Subject but also occur between the Subject and Pro-predicate, or following the Pro-predicate.

IO: Eurai-za sau-pu-na Su: ni PP: hodade
Eurai-poss sister-qual-io you know

'You know Eurai's sister.'

B: pog po-vo-za rotapu-vo-za Su: ne
work that-qual-poss truth-qual-for T

PP: ununu
ignorant

'I don't know the truth of this work.'

B: anga oko-pu-za Su: ne PP: kaeve
woman that-qual-for T dislike

'I don't like that woman.'

O: abata-vo Su: ne PP: ununu
name-qual T ignorant

'I don't know the name.'

O: paru-ma ngeti-vo M: aviam Su: ni PP: hodade
they-poss story-qual little you know

'You know a little of their story.'

Su: pi PP: raita
he desire

'He likes (it).'

5.1.6 Equational

Equational Clause has two obligatory nuclear tagmemes, Topic and Comment.

Equational Clause =

*Topic
pronoun
noun
adjective
Possessive Noun Phrase
Descriptive Noun Phrase

*Comment
noun
Appositional Noun Phrase
Descriptive Noun Phrase
Descriptive Noun Phrase
Rules:

(1) Any noun or adjective manifesting the Topic occurs with noun qualitative suffixes.

(2) Peripheral tagmemes which occur are Location, Subject, and Benefaction. These usually precede the Topic but Location also occur between the Topic and Comment. Only one peripheral tagmeme occurs.

(3) Some occurrences of this clause resemble an Appositional Noun Phrase but the absence of predicate in an Equational Clause and the difference of focus from Item and Apposition of the Noun Phrase to Topic and Comment of the Equational clause sets them apart.

(4) Tagmeme order is reversible but rarely occurs that way.

(5) In the Comment tagmeme nouns are always suffixed with noun qualitative suffixes and adjectives are usually suffixed. Adjective, and adjective, are optionally unsuffixed. Adjective are always suffixed in this position.

To: raba-vo-za
    gogo-ta C: keza-ts
    rubber-qual-poss work-qual strong-qual

    'Rubber work is hard.'

To: Pe-ma
  nono-pu C: pi tina-pu
  l-poss mother-qual she good-qual

    'My mother is a good one.'

To: aliza-si L: evo C: vono
    light-qual here nothing

    'There is no light here.'

Su: na-ri To: gogo-ta C: vono
    certain-qual work-qual nothing

    'Some have no work.'

B: abana-ri-za To: paru-ma gogo-vo C: aviama
    man-qual-for they-poss work-qual little

    'About men, their work is small.'
Su: abang po-pu 8: pi-ma movega
man that-qual he-poss false
ha-ma-ha-vo-za To: ngon-sgi C: taira
speak-cont-3s/per-qual-for moon-qual what
'This man, for speaking falsely, how many months (will he get)l'

5.1.7 Pre-quote

Pre-quote Clause has one obligatory tagmemes, the Predicate and two optional tagmemes.

Pre-quote Clause =

+Subject +Referent +Predicate
pronoun wota 'this' Auxiliary V.P.
noun epara 'this' with saying or
Noun Phrase thinking verb
pata 'reply'

Aules:

(1) Peripheral tagmemes, Location, Benefaction, Time, Object and Manner occur.

(2) hatra 'speak' most frequently expounds the Predicate.

(3) Referent tagmemes does not occur with pata 'reply'.

(4) If Pre-quote clause and Post-quote clause co-occur in a sentence, the same verb expounds both Predicates, and both Predicates must agree in aspect, person and number.

(5) pata 'reply' is a particle and is not reflected as a verb.

(6) This clause type is always independent and can be indicative, imperative, or negative.

R: go-ta  P: ha-ha
that-qual speak-3s/per
'He said this.'

T: hapola Su: paru R: epa-ta  P: a-nga-ba
a while ago they this-qual lpi-tell-3pl/per
'A few days ago they told us this.'
5.1.8 Post-quote

A Post-quote Clause is comprised of two tagmeme, the Predicate and Object.

\[
\text{Post-quote Clause =} \\
\text{+Referent} + \text{Predicate}
\]

\[\text{pota 'that'} \quad \text{verb of saying or thinking}\]

Rules:

1. No peripheral tagmeme occur.
2. Pota 'reply' does not occur.
3. Haza 'speak' most frequently manifests the Predicate.
4. This clause type is usually independent but can be dependent or non-finite.

R: po-ta P: ha-ha
\[\text{that-qual} \quad \text{speak-3s/peri}\]

'He said that.'

R: po-ta P: ma-nga-qi
\[\text{that-qual} \quad \text{3s-tell-1pl/peri}\]

'We told him that.'

5.2 Clause level peripheral tagmeme

Peripheral tagmeme are those which are not pertinent in determining clause type distinctions, but which are very common in occurrence. The following peripheral tagmeme are optional in all clauses except Existential, Stative and Equational where peripheral items are limited. They need to be described only since their internal features are the same regardless of their distribution within various clause types. Some clause level peripheral tagmeme occur obligatorily with their typical tagmeme markers, others occur optionally with their typical tagmeme markers, and others occur obligatorily without such a marker. Occasionally note 'and', 'but' occurs between clause tagmeme as a Discourse Level Focus marker.
5.2.1 Subject

Subject tagmeme occurs optionally with its tagmeme marking suffix which is -he.

Subject functions as the performer of an action or as subject of a Static Clause. It is manifested by a pronoun, name, noun, interrogative or Noun Phrase. Any pronoun occurring here must agree with the subject person/aspect suffix of the following Predicate.

5.2.2 Manner

Manner tagmeme occurs without a slot marking suffix. This tagmeme indicates the way in which an action was carried out or to indicate the fact that the action was a repeat of a previous action. It is manifested by an adverb, interrogative, adjective, or Nominalized Manner Clause.

A Nominalized Manner Clause is an independent clause, or Series Sentence with indicative or negative Endocentre in the Predicate, nominalized by the qualitative suffix -za. The clause or sentence is optionally perfect or imperfect aspect.

\begin{verbatim}
ta-me-gi-ta
do-cont-lp/per-qual
'what we are doing'
ta-pa-zu-ta
do-3s/imp-pur-qual
'what he will do'
\end{verbatim}

The purpose suffix -za always occurs following imperfect aspect and before the qualitative suffix.

5.2.3 Purpose, reason and benefaction

Purpose, Reason and Benefaction tagmemes are obligatorily suffixed with -za. This suffix is homophonous with -za (possessive) but these clause tagmemes have no following Head tagmemes.

5.2.3.1 Purpose tagmeme indicates the purpose of the action of the predicate and is manifested by an independent clause, whose Predicate is imperfect aspect (indicative or negative Mood), suffixed with -za. This tagmeme optionally repeats up to 4 times, optionally linked by ma 'and/or'.

\begin{verbatim}
ivo-vo ngoda-ka-za
water-qual wash-lp/imp-pur
'for the purpose of washing'
\end{verbatim}
gipiro-kapi
  na-ino-tu-za
  good-qual
  neg-eat-negasp-pur
  'for the purpose of not eating'

5.2.3.2 Reason tagmeme indicates the reason for the action of the
Predicate and is shown by an independent clause whose predicate is
perfect aspect, nominalized by the qualifier vo, plus the suffix -za.
Reason and Purpose do not co-occur.

  ni ure-ngi-vo-za
  you hit-2s/per-qual-re
  'because you hit'

  pi-na morega ha-ama-ha-vo-za
  he-poss false speak-cont-3s/per-qual-re
  'because he is speaking falsely'

5.2.3.3 Benefaction tagmeme indicates the person or thing for whom,
on behalf of whom, or about whom the action is done. It is realized
'by a possessive pronoun, an intensive pronoun, adjective, (kaeve),
auxiliary, a noun or a Noun Phrase, plus the suffix -za. The
interrogative word tairai is 'for what/why' also occur here. Bene-
faction co-occurs with Purpose or Reason. (The occurrence of kaeva
'dislike' while functioning grammatically as benefaction has a meaning
more of manner.)

  ne-na-za
  l-poss-for
  'for me'

  itoulo-vo-za
  smoke-qual-for
  'about the smoke'

  kaeve-za
  dislike-for
  'for dislike'

Benefaction tagmeme often occurs with adjective, when manifesting Prop-
predicate of Stative Clause where one would expect an Object tagmeme.

5.2.4 Instrument/accompaniment

The Instrument/Accompaniment tagmeme indicates the inanimate
means by which an action is executed or the companions of the
subject. It is manifested by a name, noun, interrogative, pronoun or
Noun Phrase, obligatorily suffixed with -nanga 'with', or by an
Accompaniment Noun Phrase.
5.2.5 Location

Location tagname indicates the location of an action, person or thing and is manifested by a locational, interrogative, location Phrase, place name, Nominalized Location Clause, or a pronoun, noun or Nom Phrase obligatorily suffixed with location syntactic relators -ka, -ti 'toward' or -hananga ~ -kananga 'from', -hata ~ -hata 'for being at'.

A Nominalized Location Clause is an independent clause, or Series Sentence with indicative or negative Verb Endocentre in the Predicate, nominalized by the qualitative suffix -sa, plus the location syntactic relator -ka 'at'. Such a clause is perfect or imperfect aspect but if it is imperfect aspect the suffix -sa precedes the qualitative suffix.

\begin{align*}
\text{sa-ha-sa-ka} & \quad \text{go-3S/3P/3A/3D/3M-qual-at} \\
\text{'where he went'} \\
\text{ra-pane-sa-e-ka} & \quad \text{go-Spl/Imp-Pur/Imp/Imp/Imp-qual-at} \\
\text{'where they will go'}
\end{align*}

From an English speaker's point of view the Nominalized Location Clause is not only strictly location in meaning. It can refer to time and would usually be translated by a relative clause beginning with 'that'.

5.2.6 Time

Time tagname indicates the time of an action and is manifested by a temporal, interrogative, date, day name, Nom Phrase, Time Phrase or Nominalized Time Clause.

A Nominalized Time Clause is an independent clause, or Sentence, with indicative or negative verb Endocentre in the final predicate, nominalized by the qualitative suffix -ra, plus the syntactic relator -ba, which in this instance relates to time and not location. Such a clause is perfect or imperfect aspect but if it is imperfect aspect the suffix -sa precedes the qualitative suffix.
sa-ha-ra-ha
'when he went'

go-3s/per-qual-at

sa-pane-za-ra-ha
'when they will go'

go-3pl/imp-pur-qual-at

5.3 Independent, dependent and non-finite clause distinctions

All clauses described with the exception of Existential, Stative, Equational and Pre-quote, are independent or dependent or non-finite depending on the occurrence or non-occurrence of the Verb Exocentre as described in Chapter 3.

The independent - dependent - non-finite clause distinction is more relevant in Sentence structure than in the description of clause types. Independent clauses are Indicative, Negative or Imperative depending on which classifiers occur on the predicate. Non-predicate clauses are only indicative. Non-finite clauses manifest Compound Clause tagmemes and Dependent Clauses usually manifest Sequence Sentence tagmemes.

5.4 Clause level tagmem order

Tagmem order is very free and the language helper would allow almost any reversal or alteration in order. However, in text, the following tendencies have been noted:

(a) Predicate is almost always clause final.

(b) Subject, Indirect Object, Object precede the Predicate, usually in that order. The Subject and Object, and Indirect Object and Object order is reversible as long as this does not cause ambiguity. If the fillers of these slots are such that confusion would result than the order must be Subject and Object. The Subject and Indirect Object marker also occur to prevent ambiguity.

(c) Time, location, Instrument/accompaniment, Manner, Purpose, Reason and Benefaction appear to be free in their order. They occur pre-subject or intervene between Subject, Indirect Object, Object and Predicate.

(d) Tagmemes occasionally occur post Predicate and have the falling intonation which typically occurs on the Predicate only. These can be afterthoughts but frequently occur post Predicate for emphasis. All tagmemes have been observed in this position.
5.5 Clause level expansion possibilities

Clauses are often just one or two tagmemes, the Predicate plus or minus one other. Three or four tagmemes are not infrequent. A few examples with five tagmemes have been seen.

5.6 Compound clauses

5.6.0 Introduction

"One of the analytical problems faced by those who have developed and used the tagmemic approach has been the identification of LEVELS within the syntactic hierarchy. One of the characteristic problem areas in this regard has been the levels above the clause".

In Kunitaipa there are CHAINS* of non-finite clauses (see 1.3 and 3.2.6.1.2) followed by an independent clause the whole of which functions as a unit and which manifests Sentence level tagmemes in the same manner as a clause does. The expansion possibilities are too great to allow this unit to be described as a Verb Phrase and in considering whether or not it could be a sentence type it seemed unlikely that embedding would occur on such a grand scale. In every Sentence Base where a clause can occur, this unit also occurs, and in any other tagmem where a clause occurs, this unit also occurs. Wherever a clause embeds in another construction this unit also embeds. Although this unit is made up of a string of Non-finite Clauses and all clause level tagmemes can occur within these clauses, the occurrence of these tagmemes is less frequent than with other clauses, and the meaning of such clause level tagmemes often relates to more than one, and sometimes all, of the clauses in the unit.

The setting up of another level between Clause and Sentence has also been considered. This would have simplified the grammatical description but such a level would not demonstrate any of the complexity found on the other grammatical levels of Kunitaipa and for this reason has not been followed. Since this unit acts on higher levels and in all other constructions like a clause and because it is a closely linked unit, it is described here as a Compound Clause.

5.6.1 Compound clause structure

Any Non-finite Clause occurs in a Compound clause. The verb of a Non-finite Clause is a verb stem plus -ta 'and' or -val time overlap. Person, aspect and number are not indicated. From one to six clauses commonly occur usually followed by one Independent Clause which carries the person/number/aspect verb suffixation for the whole construction.

This final clause is almost always a clause with a Predicate but a few rare examples of a non-predicative clause occurring have been
Non-finite Clauses are commonly manifested by a predicate only but all clause level nuclear and peripheral tags optionally occur within them. The Subject tagmemes, if present usually occurs in the first clause of the chain, and is also permitted to occur in an expanded or contracted form in subsequent clauses. Such an expansion or contraction of subject is indicated by a noun or pronoun in the Subject tagmemes (see Chapter 8.1.6 'Higher levels of the Kunimaipa Grammatical Hierarchy'). A chain of Ditransitive Non-finite Clauses must agree in the object prefix in person and number with each other and with the final Independent Clause and manifests tagmemes on the Sentence level. Unlike other clauses Non-finite Clauses do not fill Sentence level tagmemes.

Generally a Compound Clause presents a series of actions by one participant (which optionally expands or contracts) occurring simultaneously or in chronological order without interruption. The same non-finite predicate can repeat a number of times indicating that the action was continued or repeated a number of times. A common example of this is the repetition of a motion verb with continuous mode up to six times to indicate a long distance or a long time involved.

Non-finite clause suffixes have been described in 3.2.6.1 and 5.3. The mode suffix -ho does not have to occur in all clauses in a chain but can occur in one or more. The occurrence of this suffix in one Non-finite Clause of the chain usually means that the remainder of the Compound Clause is included time-wise in that Non-finite Clause.

'Haopata ni en ngat so-ho-ta agare sa-ta
Ena nppu ura-ha
Possum one hit-3/ger
Yesterday, going hunting, he went up there and killed a possum.'

Occasionally a Non-finite Clause occurs after the dependent clause. This is a means of focusing on that clause in the same manner as clause level tagmemes are focused upon when they occur in the post predicate position.

There are two sub-types of Compound Clauses, Loose Knit and Close Knit.

A Loose Knit Compound Clause occurs with any verb in the Independent Clause of the final action, or with a non-predicative Independent Clause there. Chain tagmemes occurs from one to six times.
Since the Compound Clause encodes a series or events which have varying time relationships it seems relevant to include the deep structure encoded by those events. The deep structure of Overlap or Succession is only indicated by a Non-finite Clause with -vai plus an Independent Clause.

The motion verb sa- 'go' frequently occurs in a clause following one or more Non-finite Clauses with -vai, to emphasize the continuity of those events often without any actual movement involved at all.

Several examples of Non-finite Clauses with both -ta and -vai in the same chain have been seen. Two examples have been seen in which the object of the final Independent Clause occurs in the immediately preceding Non-finite Clause.

This Compound Clause type is not as closely knit as the Close Knit Compound Clause but time-wise the events happen simultaneously or in sequence with little time lapse between. Sometimes the verb ta- 'do' occurs after -vai in a Chain meaning the continuation of the previous action of the chain. The occurrence of -hoho ~-ho 'after' is not common and is a means of emphasizing the chronology of the two events between which it occurs. It never co-occurs with -vai.

Occasionally mete 'and' occurs between two clauses in this construction as some kind of Discourse level focus marker.

A non-predicative Independent Clause in the final Action does not give any clue as to aspects so the whole unit is dependent on the context to indicate this. Person and number are optionally indicated by a pronoun.
Examples of Loose Knit Compound Clause:

hade-pu uro-vai abana-pu meno-vai to-vai ema-ha
dog-qual hit-cto man-qual hit-cto do-cto came-he/per
'He came hitting dogs and killing men.'

teima tekta doan-ta ogare oro-ho-ta aban
house-qual build-and down-there sleep-cost men

tairaraha peka nonoroza gogovo to-ha-pane
when that-at road's work do-cont-they/imp

'When will the men build the house and while living down there be working on the road?'

The following example shows a non-predicative clause in the Final Action.

abana Gunimai-pu na-ri-nanga ne Lae to-ho-ta
man Gunimai certain-qual-with I Lae do-cont-and
ne-dede 1-know
'I was working in Lae with some Gunimai men and so I know.'

The following two examples show the typical occurrence of Loose Knit Compound Clauses manifesting Bases of Series Sentences. The sentence bases are separated by //. The second Base in the first example is an example of both -ta and -vai occurring in the same Compound Clause.

helo-ho-ta paru helo-u-ha-na //ete-vai
climb-son-and they climb-cont-they/per-chs look-cto

rei maota ema-ta pota ha-ta zeitaka ema-ta
we again come-and go up-and village-at come-ind

gipizo ne-gi-puh // tu rava-ta rei reims
food eat-we/per-ss full become-and we our

zeitakara voroura-ta eme-gi-na...
place-at-for turn-and come-we/per-chs

'They climbed and while they were climbing we came again watching and went up to the village and arrived and ate and were satisfied and we returned to our own village and...'
A Close Knit Compound Clause has a form of heza 'be' in the Existential, and Chain tagmeme occurs from one to three times.

This Compound Clause is a very closely knit unit and although with -ta one would expect sequential action, the meaning of heza 'be' causes the action or chain actions preceding it to be continuous, and overlapping with each other and with itself. Chain tagmeme occurs from one to four times and any form of heza 'be' occurs. The occurrence of the mode marker -ho in one of the Non-finite Clauses emphasizes the continuity of the actions. The expansion possibilities are more restricted than Loose Knit Compound Clauses. Fewer Clauses occur, and tagmene other than Predicate are less frequent. Only location tagmene occurs with heza 'be' in the Existential, but no examples of this have been seen in spontaneous text. Mete 'and' and Non-finite Clauses with -val do not occur.

The Close Knit Compound Clause embeds in the Loose Knit Compound Clause but the reverse does not happen.

Examples of Close Knit Compound Clause:

va vete-ta pata varenga-ta no-ho-ta
get throw-and different cook-and eat-cont-and
he-ha
was-they/per
'They were putting (it) [in the pot] and were cooking it some different way and were eating it.'

hodade rava-ta he-ha
knowledge become-and be-he/per
'His knowledge was increasing.'
touta-ta no-ko-ta ru rava-ta he-ha
sit-and eat-cont-and satisfied become-and be-they/per
'They were sitting and eating and becoming satisfied.'

The following two examples show Close Knit Compound Clauses embedding in Loose Knit Compound Clauses. The embedding is indicated by //.

paru gipzo va-ta gataura-ta varenga-ta // abanari
they food get-and peel-and cook-and non-qual
ma-na-ta he-ha
them-give-and be-they/per
'They got the food, peeled and cooked it, and were giving it to the men.'

rel sa-ta // avasi-ka mena-ta gi ura-ta he-ka
we go-and garden-in hit-and clear-and be-we/imp
'We will go and will be digging and clearing the garden.'

The following example shows a Close Knit Compound Clause manifesting the final Base of a Series Sentence. The Bases are indicated by //.

eme-pike-na // rari no-he-ta he-ka
come-you/imp-chs we eat-cont-and be-we/imp
'When you come we will be eating.'
6. SENTENCES

6.0 Introduction

This chapter is a description of Kunimaipa Sentences, the grammatical level which occurs above the clause and below the paragraph.

Generally Kunimaipa Sentences have final falling intonation plus pause except for the yes-no interrogative which has final rising intonation. The final falling intonation is useful as a criteria for making sentence breaks particularly when the following sentence begins with a conjunction. Such a conjunction is considered to be linkage on the paragraph level. When a sentence embeds in another sentence that embedded sentence has intonation according to the sentence Base in which it is embedded.

All conjunctions included in this paper as sentence linkage are equally significant as paragraph linkage. These are na 'or' and mete 'and, then' which also occur linking tagmemes within the phrase and clause, povga 'therefore' which also links tagmemes within the clause, and ong 'but' which only occurs linking tagmemes on the sentence and paragraph level. Combinations of these conjunctions also occur and are described where relevant. The conjunction mete also occurs between sentence bases where one would not normally expect it as a type of Discourse level focus marker.

Sentence tagmemes are characterized by morphemes, words, phrases, clauses and frequently by sentences which are embedded. Grammatically, the sentence is a combination of clauses and is held together by tense restrictions on the verbs, by conjunctions, and by other restrictions on the exponents of the bases. The dependent-independent distinction in the morphology of the verb excentre is important in holding together some sentence constructions.

Kunimaipa Sentences are either Complex, or Non-complex. They are described in that order in this chapter and each group is accompanied by a chart which highlights the differences between the sentence types. Each sentence description has a bidimensional array showing the nuclear tagmemes, their exponents and deep grammar categories, plus notes and examples. Sentence periphery which can occur with any sentence type is described separately.

Recursion is common but in each sentence description only those exponents actually observed have been listed except where otherwise stated. With additional data no doubt these lists would enlarge.

Deep grammar formulas are included in each bidimensional array under a double line. Unusual deep grammar is formalized lowest on the bidimensional array with a single line between it and the formulas of the more common categories. Abbreviations and deep grammar symbols
used are described in the front of the paper.

The definition of deep structure symbols and the concepts concerning deep structure used in this chapter have been based on the material in "The Deep and Surface Structure of Inter-Clausal Relations" by Ballard, Conrad and Longacre.
1. Complex Sentence Types

1.1. Complex Sentences

1.1.1. Sentences with Bases linked by predicate suffixation or an obligatory conjunction

1.1.1.1. Series Sentence

1.1.1.2. Contrafactural Sentence

1.1.1.3. Antithesis Sentence

1.1.1.4. Statement

1.1.1.5. Statement + Subordinate

1.1.2. Sentences with Bases linked by juxtaposition with or without an optional conjunction

1.1.2.1. Coordinate 1 Sentence

1.1.2.2. Coordinate 2 Sentence

1.1.2.3. Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence

1.1.2.4. Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence, Base 1 + Base 2

1.1.2.5. Subordinate + Base 1

1.1.2.6. Subordinate + Base 2

1.1.2.7. Subordinate + Base 1 + Base 2

1.1.3. Quotation Sentences

1.1.3.1. Direct Quotation Sentence

1.1.3.2. Indirect Quotations

1.1.4. Predicates are always different

1.1.4.1. Aspect in each Base is the same

1.1.4.2. Aspect in each Base is not the same

1.1.4.3. Predicates are always the same

1.1.4.4. Predicates of Cause are always different

1.1.4.5. Predicates of Cause are always different

1.1.4.6. Predicates of Cause are always different

1.1.5. Predicate and subject is the same

1.1.5.1. No aspect restrictions between Bases

1.1.5.2. Base can be reversed

1.1.5.3. Predicate and subject is the same

1.1.5.4. No aspect restrictions between Bases

1.1.5.5. Base can be reversed
6.1 Complex sentences

6.1.1 Sentences with bases linked by predicate suffixation or an obligatory conjunction

There are six sentences in this group, Series Sentence, and Contrapositional Sentence are linked by verb suffixation and Antithetical, Coordinate 1, Alternative and Circumstantial Result Sentences are linked by an obligatory conjunction.

6.1.1.1 Series Sentence is manifested by Base 1-Series which is followed by an obligatory link. These two optionally repeat thirteen times and are followed by Base 2-Culmination which is never repeated. The optional Chronologizer can occur following any Base 1 plus Link.

+Base 1 \( n=1-13 \)

+Series
Independent Indicative Cl
Alternative S
Coordinate 1 S
Antithetical S
Circumstantial Result S
Amplification S
Coordinate 2 S
Direct Quotation Sentence
Reason S
Neg Pos Antithetical S
Direct Quotation S

+Link
+Chronologizer
-ana chs
-puhu
-ga
-emph

+Base 2
Independent Clause
Alternative S
Direct Quotation S
Antithetical S
Circumstantial Result S
Amplification S
Contrapositional S
Neg Pos Antithetical S
Listing S
Succession

P
P
P v P ∧ Q v Q ...

Overlap

P
P ∧ Q, ∧ ...
P ∧ Q.
P
P ∧ Q
P v P ∧ Q, v Q ∧ ...

Efficient Cause

P ∧ P

Notes:
1. The deep grammatical structures are succession, overlap, and very occasionally efficient cause and the combination possibilities of these in any one sentence are numerous. The events in a series sentence tend to be chronological even when the Chronolizer does not occur, but they can be overlapping. One grammatical way of indicating simultaneity is the occurrence of continuous mode in one Base followed by a Base without mode. This means that the event in the second Base occurs within the time span of the event in the first Base. The subject in both Bases is always different. This grammatical indication of simultaneity can occur at any point in a Series Sentence. When overlap is encoded the Chronolizer never occurs on the first Base. See examples 3 and 7.

2. Any clause in Base 1 must have a verbal predicate and any sentence in that slot must have a verbal predicate in its final Base.

3. The Link is manifested by either:

-change of subject following
-same subject following
-emphatic (In this dependent position it means 'because' and gives a cause and effect meaning to the sentence.)

These suffixes occur on the predicate of any Independent Indicative Clause which manifests Base 1 following the person/aspect/number
suffix. They occur in the same way on the final predicate of any sentence embedded in Base 1 of a Series Sentence.

4. The Chronolizer is manifested by either:

- ho
- ho
- ho
- ho
- ho

Both these suffixes indicate strict chronological sequence, but -ho indicates that the second action can be some time after the first whereas -na indicates that the second action follows immediately. See examples 8, 9 and 10. The Chronolizer does not occur with -ga.

5. This sentence type allows for a great deal of expansion and thus is typically much longer than any other sentence type. Series Sentences typically link together into Narrative Paragraphs and Descriptive Paragraphs.

6. Aspect mode and mood co-occurrence restrictions are:

a) Usually either perfect or imperfect aspect is maintained throughout the sentence, but efficient cause deep structure can be shown by perfect plus imperfect, or perfect plus present continuous.

b) Mood morphemes which indicate continuity of action usually occur in all Bases if they occur, with the exception of its occurrence to indicate simultaneous action. Present continuous mood occurs consistently throughout Descriptive Discourse relating to present time and past continuous mood occurs consistently throughout Descriptive Discourse relating to earlier times, and throughout Legend Narrative Discourse.

c) Negative mood can only occur in non-final Bases by means of a Negative Verb Phrase. It is also permitted to occur in the C Ulmination.

d) Imperative mood follows either aspect and only occurs in the C Ulmination.

7. Intonation in each non-final Base is level or rising and final falling intonation occurs in Base 2. Occasionally a pre-Culmination Base 1 is included in the sentence final falling intonation pattern, or two base 1 occur within one Base 1 intonation pattern.
Examples: Series Sentence

1. 
   /pota ha-ha-na / ngevo aho rava-ha-na / reiparo
   this say-they.per-chs talk big became-it.per-chs we.all
   ha-ta sa-ta ema to-ho-ta he-gi-puho / Punke vete-ha-puho
   say-go and come do-cont-and be-we.per-ss name left-he.per-ss
   Ara vete-ha-puho / sa-ha /
   name left-he.per-ss go-he.per
   'He said this and there was plenty of talk, and we were all going
   around talking about it and Punke left Alan and went away.'

2. 
   /velap ure-gi-puho / rangiza-ta rite-gi-puho / rata
   pig hit-we.per-ss burn-and divide-we.per-ss intestine
   va maine vate-gi-puho / helengade vete-gi-puho //
   get alone make-we.per-ss hot.stones throw-we.per-ss
   ginevikapi va-ta ema-ha-na / veiro-gl/
   green.vegetable get-and come-they.per-chs busy-we.per
   'We killed the pigs and burnt their hair and then butchered
   them and put the intestines in a separate place, and when they
   brought green vegetable we cooked it all in the ground oven.'

3. 
   /veiro-o-gi-na / Ara ema-ta e-te-ha /
   bury-cont-we.per-chs Alan come-and look-he.per
   'While we were cooking the ground oven Alan came and looked.'

4. 
   /topoura-ta pin raiti-ta ngada-pa-ta ta-ha-na /
   gather-and his light burn-it.imp-pur do-it.per-chs
   Gavahata zeihananga vol napu Onu zeihananga vol napu va-ta
   name place from pig one name.place from pig one get-and
   ema-ha-puho / pariparo der ngai aho verrya-ha /
   come-they.per-ss they all dance big appear-they.per
They gathered and when they were about to start the generator others brought a pig from Gavahat and a pig from Omu and they all had a big dance.'

5. Pab & Gob. & Rab & Qb
/a-vaha-fuhu // peve peh e-vete-ama-ah ma us-get-the-per ss today he water us-throw-cont-he.per or
dedwe a-n-a-ma-ah na pata ta-ma-ha-na // reipare flesh us-give-cont-he.per or this da-cont-he.per-chs we all
atavara e-vi-ma-ha-na / piter musak rave-gi
cross us-put-cont-no.per-chs now quiet become-we.per

'They got us and now he is baptising us and giving us communion and he is making the cross relevant to us and so today we have become quiet.'

6. P & P > Q
//nariho nari na-me og karakararah raya-ha-na
some something.to neg-put but together.only become-the.per-chs
ste-ta pata, 'ako oke reipare karakarah rave-gi
look-and reply no there you.all together.at become-you.per
poera pena oke.'//
therefore enough there

'No one scored but they tied so he looked and said, "This is no good! You have tied therefore no more play."'

7. Pa & Qb & Rc & Sd & Tb & Yd & Ye & Yd & Ya
/vereva uro-o-ha-na / iri re-ha-na / appear hit-cont-the.per-chs light break-it.per-chs
pirisi voiholora pata-vojmu moniigi vo-vai emo-ha-ta
policemen.and doctor-boy money get-cio come-cont-and
eem-ta rei tapeiara rei honekarama topora-ta
come-and we same.place.at.only we one.at.only gather-and
to-o-gi-fuhu / ake te-ha-na / sadevo toda-ka-ta
do-cont-we.per ss light open-it.per-chs Sunday sit-we.ing-pur
tegina / sadevoka parupima kakora va-ta sa-ha-na /
do-we.per-chs Sunday.on they,two's cargo get-and go-they.per-chs
They appeared and danced and when it was light the police and the medical orderly collected the money and we at that same place were gathered and when it was light we were about to have church and (on Sunday) they took their cargo and we had church and the people left and tomorrow on Monday he will go.'

"After her husband took the boy away the woman cried."

"As soon as he has gone you will get it and there will be none left."

"We will speak here and after that you will go make it clear (to the others)."

6.1.1.2 Contrafactual Sentence is a close knit construction which is made up of four obligatory tagnomes. The Protagasis is realized by Base 1 which has the suffix -time/-satin: on the final word of its filler, whether this be a verb, noun or adjective. The Apodosis is realized by Base 2 which is followed by the free root naab / narab / nuk. The use of these three words varies according to dialect. This tagnome optionally repeats twice.
Contrafactual Sentence =

\[ \text{Protasis} \uparrow \text{Apodosis} \]

\(+\text{Base 1}\) \(+\text{Contrafactual Marker 1}\)

\(-\text{time/}

\(+\text{Base 2}\) \(+\text{Contrafactual Marker 2}\)

\(-\text{C1}\) \(\text{Independent Inc.}\) \(\text{nab} / \text{marab} / \text{nak}\)

\(-\text{satine} \ 'if'\)

\(-\text{C1}\) \(\text{Series Sentence} \ \ 'would'\)

\(-\text{Noun Phrase}\)

\(-\text{Realization}\)

\[ P \land (\exists \theta \in Q) \land (P \lor Q) \]

Notes:

1. Imperfect aspect and future continuous mode do not occur in the predicate of either Protasis or Apodosis and present continuous mode occurs only in the Protasis. A present continuous mode in the Protasis puts the whole sentence in the present time.

2. Any Independent Clause except Imperative manifests the Protasis and only Independent Indicative Clauses manifest the Apodosis. A negative statement in the Apodosis is only possible by means of a Negative Verb Phrase in the predicate of an Indicative Clause. The Filler of Base 2 must contain a verbal predicate thus Stative, Equational and Existential Clauses, although independent, do not occur there. A negative statement in both Bases is permitted.

3. Any Contrafactual Sentence can transform to a past circumstance Result Sentence by transformation of positive to negative and vice versa, elimination of -time and marab and the addition of povola 'therefore' between the Bases.

Example: (Compare example 1)

\(\text{ni se-agi povola ne na-em} \)

you go-you.per therefore I neg-cone

'you went so I didn't come.'

4. Contrafactual Sentence is more limited in its embedding possibilities than most other sentence types. In a Series Sentence it only manifests the final Base but in a Coordinate or Antithetical
Sentence it is linked to a following Base by the appropriate conjunction. Following this conjunction the Base is the reversal of the Protasis of the Contrafactual Sentence i.e. negative instead of positive and vice versa. When a Contrafactual Sentence embeds in a Coordinate 1 Sentence or an Antithetical Sentence the deep structure of the whole construction is always contrast.

5. Examples of Contrafactual Sentences are rare in text and this analysis is based mainly on elicited material and free speech.

6. The intonation in Base 1 is rising or level and in Base 2 is falling.

7. One example has been observed in text material and many examples heard in conversation of only the Apodosis occurring. In the example seen in the text the Apodosis manifests the first Base of an Anti-thetical Sentence and when the Apodosis occurs without the Protasis it means 'could have ...' rather than 'would have ...'. See example 11.

Examples: Contrafactual Sentence

1. /ni ma-sa-tine/ emo-ho nab / You neg-go-if come-1.per would 'If you hadn't gone I would have come.'

2. /Ririwhona te katevo ma-na-nga to-ho-zatine/ pi gogovo name.to I advice neg-her-tell do-1.per-if she work horiaa to-o-ha nab / bus only do-cont-she.per would 'If I hadn't been advising Ririhae she would have worked poorly.'

3. /gaziriholoha mena-ha-tine / note eve rari parema paitaka gazir.ones.at hit-they.per-if and here our place.at eve ne-ha-na hori meno-o-ha nab // mena-ta here be-they.per-chs bad hit-cont-they.per would hit-and rari parema meninga vo-o-ha nab / mena-ta ringa our.all's money get-cont-they.per would hit-and houses mangaro-o-ha nab / mena-ta angaholo givogi to-o-ha burn-cont-they.per would hit-and women steal do-cont-they.per nab / would
4. /en baiyasi oketing / yo-ho 
   knife there-if get-1.per would

   'If the knife had been there I would have got it.'

5. /ropu zeitska vomo-tine/ na-go-ho 
   boy place.at none-if you-tell-1.per would

   'If the boy had not been at the village I would have told you.'

6. /ni se-nga-tine / ne ma-sa to-ho 
   you go-you.per-if I neg-go do-1.per would

   'If you had gone I would not have gone.'

7. //nema papapi sa-ta gogovo ta-na-ha-tine / ne sa-ta to-ho
   my father go-and work do-cont-he.per-if I go-and do-1.per

   narab/ would

   'If my father were going and working I would go and work.'

8. (nema monopu sa-ha-na ) / ne gogovo tina to-ho-tine //
   my mother go-she.per-chs I work well do-1.per-if

   "tina te-ngi" na-nga-ha narab/ (mote ne gogovo tina
   well do-you.per me-tell-she.per would and I work well

   na-ta )

   neg-do

   '(When my mother went) if I had worked well she would have said,
   "You did well," (but I didn't work well).'
10. /aban tina he-za-pa-ting/ katsyo ma ngo ho / narab/ man good be-pre-qual-if advice him-tell-1-per would

'If I were a good man I would give him advice.'

11. /mengg me ta ha nab / onge upai para paga apu/ blessing them-do-he-1-per would but nothing hand each other

va ha paripinako get-they-per they-themselves

'They could have had the blessing (but they themselves just took each others' hands).'

6.1.1.3 Antithetical Sentence is expounded by a Thesis, Base 1, which contrasts with an Antithesis, Base 2. These are linked by the Adversative ong 'but' or ong mete 'but and'.

Antithetical Sentence =

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base 1</th>
<th>+Adversative</th>
<th>+Base 2</th>
<th>Antithesis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td>Independent C1</td>
<td>ong 'but'</td>
<td>Independent C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series S</td>
<td>Series S</td>
<td>ong mete 'but then'</td>
<td>Alternative S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate 1 S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Direct Quotation S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrafactual S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coordinate 2 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contrast Pa

| P′b |
| Pa |
| P′a |
| Pa′b |
| P′(u - a) |

ra \ (a \in \ U)
KUNIMAIPA GRAMMAR

Coupling Pa

Frustration

(P ⊕ Q) A (R ⊕ Q) A P

Paraphrase Pa

A

Notes:
1. The Antithesis is frequently expounded by an antonym of the Thesis.
2. Deep grammar is most commonly contrast but occasionally it is frustration or coupling.
3. The use of ong nete 'but then' seems to imply emphatic contrast or contrast between different aspects in the Bases. 
4. Neither the Thesis or the Antithesis ever repeat.
5. A Negative Clause occurs in either the Thesis or the Antithesis but not both.
6. Rising, level or high-falling intonation occurs in the Thesis and high-low falling in the Antithesis.
7. The conjunction ong 'but' is used much less than any other conjunction, thus the Antithetical Sentence is not common in text material. Contrast is just as often expressed with a Coordinate 1 Sentence.
8. No aspect restrictions occur. Mode morphemes can consistently co-occur or they can occur in one Base only.

Examples: Antithetical Sentence

1. Pa A P

\[\text{ne vala ha-ta vereva-ta pe tinam \; emo-ho / ong} \]
\[\text{I arose and arrive-and T \; well-only come-1.per \; but} \]
\[\text{paru garosi emaha nem nodari kuta ta-ha / my.others. who.came.first ignorant do-they.per} \]

'I got up and came as I should have but the others who came with me did wrong in ignorance.'

2. Pa A Pb

\[\text{map topora-ta he-gi-ng) / ne emo-ho ong nari ha-emu / all gather-nd be-you.per-chs T \; come-1.per but some neg-come} \]

'When you were gathering I came but some didn't come.'
3. (P & Q) ∧ (R & Q) ∧ P ∧ R

"The man will cut the road but there are those two cliffs that I showed you."

4. (P & Q) ∧ P & R

"If I had not given her good advice she would work badly, but I did give her good advice."

5. (P & Q) ∧ (R & Q) ∧ P ∧ R

"There are those here who can show them but who is wanting to get (the dynamite)?"

6. P(U - a) ∧ Pa ∧ (a ∈ b)

"And they put the grubs on the hooks, from the heads they put them and (the hook) does not all come out at the nostrils but just a little shows and they look ..."
7. Fa ∧ P"a

/nima hatetekezangi/ hatete-ta nima logorihe yi-ke-puho
your what.you.will.hear hear-and your inside.at put-you.imp-ss
he-tune/ ong hatete-ke-puho nima anaraborubana nima manel vosira
be-pro but hear-you.imp-ss your people your brothers.and
modapuza gogota to-ke-na pi anutuza abat ngetive
another's work do-you.imp-chs he God's name story
hatete-pane/
hear-he.imp

'When you hear the stories you will hear, don't keep them to
yourself but when you hear pray for and help your relatives and
someone will hear about God.'

6.1.1.4 Coordinate 1 Sentence is characterized by at least two Bases
linked by the Coordinating conjunction mete 'and'. Base 2 optionally
repeats once.

Coordinate 1 Sentence =

+ Base 1 (+Coordinating Link
Independent C1 mete 'and'
Contrafactual S adjective
Amplification S Series S
Listing S Direct Quotation S
Coordinate 2 S Alternative S
Direct Quotation S Neg Pos Antithetical S

Coupling
P ∧ Q
P'ax ∧ Pay... ∧ Pan

Expectancy Reversal
(F ⊃ Q) ∧ P ∧ Q_p
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mistaken idea</th>
<th>( (Q_P) \land tP )</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Pac</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fa</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fax</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Succession</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \overline{P} )</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overlap</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraphrase</td>
<td>P( \text{ref} )</td>
<td>( \land )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Deep grammar categories encoded are coupling, contrast, mistaken idea, expectancy reversal with occasional encoding of succession, overlap, or paraphrase.
2. The subjects can be the same or different in succeeding Bases.
3. Aspect in the predicates is the same, either perfect or imperfect. Mode optionally occurs in one or both Bases.
4. Base 1 is permitted to occur twice and usually has rising intonation but occasionally level or high-mid falling intonation occurs. Base 2 has high-low falling intonation.
5. One or more Bases can be negative or imperative mood.
6. The difference between Coordinate 1 Sentence and Coordinate 2 Sentence is:

a) Obligatory presence versus obligatory absence of conjunction.

b) They encode differently in the deep grammar.

c) Expansion possibilities due to embedding of other sentence types is much greater in Coordinate 1 Sentence. Coordinate 2 tagmemes fillers are quite limited.

7. Adjectives which have been observed in Base 2 are vono 'nothing', upele 'immature', tina 'good' and hori 'bad'. It seems probable that other adjectives could occur. The possibility of predicate ellipsis occurring here was considered but the informant seemed reluctant to include a verb.

Examples: Coordinate 1 Sentence

1. P ∧ Q

\[
/\text{ni} \text{ top zeimakeza hodadevoa gogovo } \text{t} i \text{n} \text{am} \text{ to-ho-za } // \\
\text{you paper house's knowledge's work well only do-cont-im}
\]

mete tokaat tep zeimakeza hodadevo vone rava-pane-ns zeitak and later paper house's knowledge finish-it.imp-chs place.at

voroura-ta ema-ta herisita gogovo zeitaka to-ho-za // \\
turn-and come-and body's work place.at do-cont-imp

'You be working well at school and later when school is finished you come back to the village and be doing our kind of work.'

2. Pa ∧ QA

\[
/\text{gogota t} \text{ in} \text{s ca, tin to-o-ke } // \text{mete top zeimakeza} \\
\text{work well do well do-cont-you.imp and paper house's}
\]

hodadevo vo-ke-puho // knowledge get-you.imp-ss

'You do your work well, be doing well continuously; and you will get understanding and ...'

3. Pa ∧ QB

\[
/\text{ne nonoro sohoek smo-ho } // \text{mete ari ununu povoza} \\
T \text{ road where.1 went come-1.per and you ignorant therefore}
\]

To-o-ri-na meno-ha // \\
do-cont-you,per-chs hit-they,per
'I came on the same road that I went en but you forgot and therefore they hit you.'

4. Pax A Pax

/zeisilga na-emk // mete evo amun na-emk ong naeka place.at neg-come and here also neg-come but somewhere
sa-wa //
g3-he.per

'He didn’t come to the village or to here but he went somewhere else.'

5. P’ax A Pax A Pax

/reima itihavera so-o-gi / mete norah reima
our firewood for go-cont-we.per and sometimes our
namorso so-o-gi / mete reima ginevilapiza avasika
road for go-cont-we and our green.vegetable for garden at

gogovu to-o-gi /
work do-cont-we.per

'We went for our firewood and sometimes we worked on the road and sometimes we worked in the garden so that we would have green vegetables.'

6. P  A  Q

/mete ogar tu dora  W3-o-ha / mete wan dora fifti
and there two.dollar get-cont-1.per and one.dollar.fifty
benitaka so-o-ha /
bank.in go-cont-it.per

'And I was getting two dollars and I was putting one dollar fifty in the bank.'

7. P  A  Q

/pl poeka pi pota to-vai so-o-ha / mete tokaget pima
he that.at he this go-cont-he.per and later his
nget soravo juda abanari pota na-ngne-o-ha, /
story.part judah men this then-tell-cont-he.per

'At that place he went around doing this and later he told this story to the Jews ...'
8. Pac ∧ Pbd

\( \text{path} \text{paruparo nimata inini home-ama-ha} \) // mete hari nina
\( \text{they all your for plenty think-cont-they per and some your} \)

\( \text{abatavoa home-ama-ha ma nina kezavoa} \)
\( \text{name for think-cont-they per or your strength for} \)

\( \text{home-ama-ha-na} \) //
\( \text{think-cont-they per chs} \)

'They are all thinking about you a lot but some are thinking about your name or about your strength ...'

9. \( (Q_1) \) ∨ TP ∧ Q

\( // \text{\"tina\" home-ta sa-ta ete-oho} \) // mete hori/
\( \text{good think and go and look 1 per and bad} \)

'I thought it was good and went and looked but it was bad.'

10. \( (P ∧ Q) ∧ P ∧ Q_0 \)

\( / \text{ne teipirangi vo-ma hata so-ho} \) / mete vone/
\( \text{I corn get 1 imp want go 1 per and none} \)

'i went to get corn but there was none.'

11. \( P_\alpha ∧ P_b \)

\( / \text{pi enasi na-va-tine ne vo-ho} \) para\(b\)/ mete pi enasi
\( \text{he knife neg get IF I get 1 per would and he knife} \)

\( \text{ha-va-ha} \)
\( \text{certainly get he per} \)

'If he had not gotten the knife I would have, but he already had it.'

12. \( P_\alpha ∧ P_\alpha \)

\( / \text{ab angivi} \) Papua napu pi geri na-ta / mete am he-ta piau
\( \text{man old Papua one he fear neg do and just be and his} \)

\( \text{vogingiem Vori-ho-ta mete vogi tumouisoam} \)
\( \text{betel nut only chew cont and and betel nut mash only} \)

\( \text{to-ho-ta mete am he-ha} \)
\( \text{do cont and and just be he per} \)
'The old Papuan man was not afraid, but he just chewed and mashed his betel nut and waited.'

6.1.1.5 Alternative Sentence is expounded by a Statement followed by as many as three Alternatives linked by the Pivot ma 'or'.

Alternative Sentence =

+Base 1 +(+Pivot +Base 2, n=1-3

Statement

Independent Cl

Listing S

Coordinate 1 S

Direct Quotation S

Coordinate 2 S

Circumstance Result S

ma 'or'

descriptive

Interrogative

Amplification S

Reason S

Direct Quotation S

Listing S

Coordinate 2 S

Coupling

P(a) \(\wedge\) P(b)

Pa \(\wedge\) Qa

P(a) \(\wedge\) Q(b)

Alternation (with excluded middle)

Pa \(\vee\) Pa

Pa \(\vee\) P"a

Alternation (without excluded middle)

Pax \(\vee\) Pay

Pa \(\vee\) Qa \(\vee\) Na

Pax \(\vee\) Pay \(\vee\) Pax

Pah \(\vee\) Pac \(\vee\) Pad
Paraphrase
\[ P_a \land P^a \land P^{ab} \]

Contrast
\[ F(U - a) \land F(a) \land (a \in U) \]

Notes:
1. The deep structures which encode are coupling, alternation (with excluded middle), alternation (without excluded middle), paraphrase and occasionally contrast.

2. The alternation occurs between the subject, object, location, object possessor, accompaniment or predicate.

3. Ellipsis of the predicate can occur when the predicates of Statement and Alternation/s is the same. The predicate may be stated in the Statement or final Alternation.

4. When the subject is not the focal point of the alternation it is mentioned in the first Base only. When the subject is understood from the context it is not mentioned in any of the Bases.

5. Either perfect or imperfect aspect is used and usually they do not co-occur.

6. A Negative Clause manifests one or all Bases.

7. Intonation is rising, level or high-mid falling in each non-final Base and high-low falling in Base 2. Pause usually occurs preceding 3, if it occurs at all.

8. Adjectives which are known to occur are *vono 'nothing', nugei 'immature', tima 'good' and hori 'bad'. Any interrogative occurs in which case the predicate is permitted to ellipse.
Examples: Alternative Sentence

1. Pa × Pa

/ní ginaza nge-me-ke / ma ni volopo vo-no/ ma ni hade-pu
you hunger.for die-you.imp or you pig none or you dog
vo-no/ ma ni no nae nae vo-no-ma he-ke /
none or you everything none.only be-you.imp

'You will be hungry, and you won't have any pigs or dogs and you
will be without anything.'

2. Pa v Qa v Ra v Sa

/"nì adasi nge-de"/ ma "ava-si mangara"/ ma "ava-si non-si ura"/ you garden plant or garden burn or garden weeds hit
ma tairai/
or what

"Dig the garden" or "Burn the garden" or "Clear the weeds" or
what?

3. Fab v Pac

/pim sa-pu-zu tina-ma koravo na-rava pi/ ma pim vosi-pu-za
his sister's well.only caretaker neg-become he or his brother's
tina-ma koravo na-rava /
well.only caretaker neg-become

'We didn't look after his sister or his brother well.'

4. Fab × Qac

(mangepi vi-ka-pu-ko) / aba hatangi va rite-ka / ma
feast put-we.imp-ss dead.man's.bones get close-we.imp or
aba rave-vo na-nge-ka /
bad.man.to him.tell-we.imp

'(We will hold the feast for the dead man's spirit and) we will
wash his bones and appoint a leader [of the feast].'

5. Fab v Pac v Pad

/sinavi namagavor gogovo to-e-ha / ma sare-vuza gogovo
church first's work do-cent-they.per or number's work
They learned about church work, or they had counting or they had Sunday school.'

6. Pax v Pay v Pas

'There are none in Gazili territory or in Zev territory or in Aivar territory.'

7. Pa v Pa'

'All the white men and women came with the government leader. They came with the patrol officer from Lae whose name was Nezl.'

8. Pa v Qu v Ra

'Did he go or is he here or what is he doing?'

9. Pa v Pa'

'Is there any sweet potato or not?'

10. Pa v P'a
'But we looked and the good time did not come so we left and turned our backs to him.'

11. \( \mathcal{P}(U - a) \land \mathcal{P}(a) \land (a \in U) \)

/ma no vai sa-ha / ma hone t glo natoho nima abatavo all leave-clo go-they.per or one.group your name ha-ma-na / ma tai ta-na-ha / speak-cont.they.per or what do-cont.they.per

'Everyone has left you, and only one group is speaking your name, or what are they doing?'

12. Pab v Pac v Pad

//ma enauholoza pat "enauholo ok heza" // pota or enau.people.for reply enau.people there be this hom me-i-pi // ma severa gumiainp poriza pat think-cont.we.per or zev and gumiainp those.ones for reply "ok heza" / there be

'And about the Enau people we said, "They are there," we thought this and about the Zev people and the Gumiaip people we said, "They are there."

6.1.1.6 Circumstance Result Sentence is expounded by two obligatory Bases, Circumstance and Result, linked by the obligatory Result Conjunction. Circumstance tagmem optionally repeats twice.

Circumstance Result Sentence =

\[ (+\text{Base 1} \land 1-3) \land (+\text{Result Conjunction}) \land (+\text{Base 2} \land \text{Result} \]
Listing S  Direct Quotation S  
Antithetical S  Abilitative S  
Coordinate 2 S  Listing S  
Neg Pos Antithetical S  Neg Pos Antithetical S  
Series S  

Efficient Cause

\[ P \land \neg P \quad \sigma \quad Q \]

Notes:
1. There are no aspect restrictions between Bases. An imperfect aspect in Base 1 is frequently followed by perfect aspect in Base 2. This means that an expected future circumstance causes present or past action.
2. Any positive-negative combination occurs.
3. Intonation is either rising, or level or high-rising falling in the Circumstance and high-low falling in the Result.
4. The Bases can be reversed with Base 1 following Base 2 and povora occurring sentence-final. When this happens intonation is sentence-final pattern in both Bases, and the sentence cannot embed in another sentence type. See example 9.
5. Circumstance can repeat up to three times. Result has been observed to repeat but this is considered to be embedding. In such a sentence the second Base is the Result of the first Base and the third Base is the Result of the second Base. Thus the second Base is both Result and Circumstance.
6. Circumstance Result Sentences most frequently occur in Behavioural Discourse.
7. The occurrence of -hohc emphaser, with povora is an emphatic form.

Examples: Circumstance Result Sentence

1. /to-ho-ta he-gi povora / ni vereve-ngi povora / 
   do-cont-and hs-we-per therefore you arrive-you, per therefore
2. /garaina tivoza zeimake haitokoro teza-ha povozeyeqetive place tea's house door open-they,per therefore story

en: / here

'They had the door opening for the tea factory in Garaina and so I have a story.'

3. /ahan reima kade epata-hanangana nari em vereva-pane men our up.there this.at-from some come arrive-they.imp

povozayeqetive / ogare sa-ta zeimake deno-ha-puho therefore down.there go-and house build-we.imp-ss

pockananga nonoro va onge vato-o-ka-na.. // that.place.from road get straight make-cont-we.imp-chs

'Some men from up there will come therefore we will go and build a house and from there we will make the road, and ...'

4. /mongepu vi-ka-puho) // ab hatang va riza-ka ma ab ravevona feast pst-we.imp-ss man's.bones wash-we.imp or bald.man.to

ma-nga-ka povozayeqetive // peter ariparo voila givog him.tell-we.imp therefore now you.all violence.and.stealing
to-tu // do-pro

'We will have a pig feast and display the dead man's bones and appoint a leader therefore for now you all must not do wrong things.'

5. /ongepu niho ete-ta heza niho koravo rava-ta heza Lord you.em look-and be you.em caretaking become-and become

povozayeqetive // ora-ka-za te-gi-puho ongepu niha kezavota therefore sleep-we.imp-pur do-we.per-ss Lord your strength.for

home-ta niha na-ngi-gi povozayeqetive // evete.tume peteve think-and you.to you.tell-we.per therefore us.throw-pro now
KiNGAIPA GRAMMAR

6. /pi kezavonangapu povoza / tokat rariparo va ourahari;
   he strength.with.one therefore later we.all get open.in.ones
   a-vata-pane-za hata pi vereva-ha-puho.../
   us-make-he.imp-pur want he appear-he.per-ss
   'He is one with strength therefore later, wanting to show us the
   light, he appeared ...'

7. /pots ha-ha povoza // paru hatete-vai so-o-ha-puho
   this say-he.per therefore they hear-cto go-cont-they.per-ss
   paw , "rotapu ma moreg ha-ma-ha
   reply true or false speak-cont-he.per perhaps this
   home-o-ha
   think-cont-they.per
   'He said that so they were listening and said, "Perhaps he is
   speaking the truth or perhaps he is lying," that is what they
   thought.'

8. /pota te-pike povoza / nemza home-vai so-ho-pike
   this do-you.imp therefore my.for think-cto go-cont-you.imp
   povoza / ari kaikai kezavonanga nem heza zeisika
   therefore you same strength with the.place,where.I.am
   verev-piko /
   come-you.imp
   'If you do this you will be thinking about me and so you together,
   with strength, will come to the place where I am.'

9. /sa-ta dimingi yireoke ara-ta va-ta em / utara
   go-and clothes vine.on loose-and get-and come rain
   pela-pane povoza /
   rain-it.imp therefore
   'Go and take the clothes off the line and bring them in because
   it will rain.'
10. /mete naheiraha povoza // kuta to-na hecavota katevo and now.time therefore ignorant do-T.IMP be-qual-for advice
na-nga-ha //
na-tell-he.PER

'But (I was) young therefore, because I would have done ignorantly, he advised me.'

11. /gozo kozata povoza / nema na-me-ngiza-ta to-vai work strong therefore I.myself 'help-and do-CONT
sa-mo-ho
go-cont-1.PER

'It is hard work therefore I myself am helping them.'

6.1.2 Sentences with Bases linked by juxtaposition, with or without an optional conjunction permitted. Coordinate 2 Sentence, listing Sentence and Amplification do not permit a conjunction between the Bases and Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence and Reason Sentence do permit an optional conjunction between the Bases.

6.1.2.1 Coordinate 2 Sentence consists of at least two juxtaposed Bases, but up to 8 Bases have been observed. There is no overt linkage.

Coordinate 2 Sentence =

+Base 1 +Base 2 \( n+1-7 \) \( + \) Summary

Independent Cl Independent Cl Independent Cl

Listing S Alternative S Alternative S

Coupling

\( P \) \( Q \)

\( P_2 \) \( Q_2 \)

\( P \land Q \) \( ... \land N \)

Succession \( P \) \( Q \)

\( P \) \( Q \)
Notes:
1. Predicates are always different. Any mood, mode or aspect occurs but all Bases must match in all of these.
2. Deep grammar encodes as coupling and succession.
3. Subject is same or different.
4. Intonation is rising or high-mid falling in non-final Bases and usually there is little pause between Bases. The final Base has the usual sentence final high-low falling intonation.
5. Only one example with the Summary tannemn has been seen, example 9. Because of the Summary tannemn this looks more like a paragraph than a Sentence but each non-final Base has high-mid falling intonation which is a sentence medial intonation pattern.
6. Coordinate 2 Sentence appears to be closely related to Listing Sentence but the fact that the predicates are different in Coordinate 2 and the same in Listing Sentence plus the fact that the listing element which is present in Listing Sentence is not present in Coordinate 2 Sentence makes them different Sentence types.
7. Coordinate 2 Sentence and Coordinate 1 Sentence differences are listed under Coordinate 1 Sentence.
8. Possibility for embedding of other sentence types appears to be limited.

Examples: Coordinate 2 Sentences
1. Pa A Qb
   /angamai rejmara gipizo varenga-ha / reiparo vinga rave-gi / mother our.for food cook-she.per we.all happy become-we.per
   'Mother cooked our food and we were happy.'
2. P A Q
   /pi ad kimgi ru-a ta pi enasira hever va-ta
   she string.bag hang-and she knife.and.digging.stick get-end
   adasika so-c-ha / gogovo ta-ha /
   garden.at go-cont-she.per work do-she.per
'She put on her string bag and got her knife and digging stick and went to the garden and worked.'

3. Pa A Qa

/pi gipizoza tina ta-pane / tinama no-ho-pane / she food.for we ll do-she.imp well.only eat-cont-she.imp

'She will work well for food and will be eating well.'

4. Pa A Qa

(lieven kirok ta-ha-na / rei von ta-ta eme-gi / 11 o'clock do-it.per-chs we finish- and come-we.per
apas lieven gipizo sikerivo ve-gi / 11.30 we food scale get-we.per

'When it was eleven o'clock we finished and came and at 11.30 we got our food.'

5. Pa A Qb A Êb

/povoza hodade goulongi oke rariparonga ngod re-ta therefore knowledge all there we.all.with fall break-and
he-pane / ivopu oke rariparoti oke na-verevo-tu / ivopuho be-it.imp enemy there we.all.to there neg-arrive-imp enemy
muot purim e-ta-ta oke tilititi na-so-tu / again pull us-do-and there bush.to neg-go-imp

'Therefore we will understand all things and an enemy will not come to us, an enemy will not come and lead us astray into the bush again.'

6. Pa A Qb

/povoza peteve ete-anne-gi // reisikaroха pastori therefore today look-cont-we.per place.all.at pastor
rava-ma-ha ma evetelois rava-ma-ha ma become-cont-they.per or evangelist become-cont-they.per or
tika rava-ma-ha // teacher become-cont-they.per

'Therefore today we see and in all the places some are becoming pastors and some are becoming evangelists and some are becoming teachers.'
7. Pa & Qa & Rb

/mahodadevotivi-pane//hodadevoterenonorotiharama
or knowledge.to put-they.imp knowledge's road.to.only

eena-pane//gogovozabanapueraihasa-pane//mherisisa
come-they.imp work's man's below go-they.imp or body's

gogovozabanapueraihasa-pane//ngegovavala-hapanework
man's below go-they.imp talk obey-they.imp

'Or they will get understanding, they will come along the road to knowledge and they will work under a work leader and they will obey.'

8. Pa & P'b

/neunumuga//pithodade-ga/
I ignorant-emph he knowledge-emph

'I was ignorant but he knew.'

9. Pa & Qa & Ra & Sa & Ta & sVa

(mete ruruai-ra turuturu ha-o-ha-ra)
and lului-and tuful speak-cont-they.per-chs we.all

ngegovolo-o-gi//ngegovavaiha-o-gi//hatmanman
talk cut-cont-we.per talk lie speak-cont-we.per disobedient

to-o-gi//ritou-to-o-gi//volopuuro-o-gi
do-cont-we.per pass do-cont-we.per plg hit-cont-we.per

abanunenono-o-gi//abhorvor-o-gi//darngai
man hit-cont-we.per dancers get-cont-we.per dancing

to-o-gi//pota-cho-tohe-gi
wo-cont-we.per that do-cont-and be-we.per

'(And while the government men were speaking) we were disobeying, we were lying, we were being disobedient, we were ignoring them, we were killing pigs, we were killing men, we were getting dancers and we were dancing, that's what we were doing.'

6.1.2.2 Listing Sentence is characterized by at least two Bases with no overt linkage.

Listing Sentence =

+Base 1

=Base $2^{n}=1-2$
Independent Cl
Direct Quotation S
Coupling
\( P(a) \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P(c) \)
\( P(a) \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P(a) \land P(a) \)
\( P(a) \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P(a) \)
Contrast
\( P(a) \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P(b) \)

Notes:
1. The predicates are always the same and occasionally the predicate is only stated in the final Base.
2. Imperative mood does not occur and aspect and mode are the same in all Bases. Negative mood has not been observed but it seems possible that it could occur.
3. The subject is the same or different.
4. A non-predicative clause in one Base is matched with non-predicative clauses in the other Bases.
5. This sentence is a device for listing subjects, objects, locations or temporals.
6. Deep grammar encodes as coupling and contrast.
7. The differences between this sentence type and Coordinate 2 Sentence are listed under Coordinate 2 Sentence. One further factor in the separation of these sentences is that the predicate of one or more Bases can be deleted in Listing Sentence but this is not possible in Coordinate 2 Sentence.
8. Examples have not been found in large numbers. With additional data possibly the list of fillers in the bi-dimensional array would be greater.

Examples: Listing Sentences
1. \( P(a) \land P(a) \)
'They brought one pig from Gavhata and they brought one from Omu.'

2. Pa & Pb & Pc

"/ sei potakariho volo u-ra-ta emo-o-ha / place.that.at.ones pig hit-and come-cont-they.per
sei potakariho ide rumunepu u-ra-ta emo-o-ha // place.that.at.ones cassowary hit-and come-cont-they.per
sei potakariho emaho o-ro-o-hapuho zivoka place.that.at.ones possums hit-cont-they.per-ss stick.on
demo-o-ha-na va-ta emo-o-ha // bind-cont-they.per-ss get-and come-cont-they.per

'Those of one place kill a pig and bring it, those of another place kill a cassowary and bring it and those of yet another place kill possums and bind them on a stick and bring them.'

3. Pah & Pac

"/ mete shan ro mangariv na-gu alana ro modori va vi-pane-za and young.men.three young.men.others get put-they.imp-pur
volo mit narezaro va-ha / eutapak nap pig meat two get-they.per tobacco.one
ziapotara ngetita va-ha-puho / (paru monoro) smoke.paper.and.matches get-they.per-ss they road.on
sa-ha )
go-they.per

'And three young men, in order to meet the other young men, got two tins of meat and they got tobacco, smoke paper and matches (and they went on the road).'</n
4. Pa & Pb

"/pete velv ahuangaraheboz na-garavatoka nari nimara oke how name people's 5 midst.in some your.for there
rotagu ha-ta ora-ma-ha / nari vetetana
true speak-and sleep-cont-they.per some discarding.only
ora-ma-ha /
sleep-cont-they.per

'Nowadays in the Gaslig people's area, men are speaking the truth about you and sleeping and others are sleeping without doing this.'

5. Pab & Pac

/pomakeha reina seirrume va-ta emo-ho-pane / pomakeha
that.in our cargo get-and come-cont-it.imp that.in
reina anga saungarivi va-ta emo-ho-pane /
our woman sister.two get-and come-cont-it.imp

'That (vehicle) will bring our cargo and it will bring our two sisters.'

6. Pab & Pac

/no ivovo vo-ho-pu eve / hodadevo vo-ho-pu eve /
I water one.who.has got here knowledge one.who.has got here

'I am a baptized one, I am one with knowledge.'

7. Pa & Pb

/ni ongapuza ropu rava-ta se-ke / agaripu rava-ta
you God's son become-and go-you.imp daughter become-and
se-ke /
go-you.imp

'You will become God's son, you will become God's daughter.'

8. Pab & Pac

(hono-o-ha-na
/ hat kapeza poseenanga
/go.across-cont-they.per-chs ear.for nettles.with
vo-o-ha / hat kapeza genaenanga vo-o-ha
/get-cont-they.per ear.for nettles.with get-cont-they.per

'(As they went across) they got their ears with the strong nettles, and they got their ears with the mild nettles.'
6.1.2.3 Amplification Sentence is characterized by two juxtaposed Bases only, the first of which is a Statement and the second of which is an Amplification which adds additional information or clarifies one point of that Statement.

Amplification Sentence =

*Base 1
Statement

Independent Cl
adjective

[Existential Cl]

*Base 2
Amplification

Independent Cl
Listing S
Alternative S
Series S
Coordinate 2 S
Neg Pos Antithetical S

[Existential Cl]

Paraphrase

Pa
\( \wedge \)
Pa
\( \wedge \)
P'a
Pa
\( \wedge \)
Pab
Pa
\( \wedge \)
Pax
Pa
\( \wedge \)
P(a)
\( \wedge \)
S
Pa
\( \wedge \)
P(a')

Comparison

Pa
\( < \)
Pa

Notes:
1. The subject is always the same and can be ellipsed in the Amplification. The predicate is the same or a synonym although in a few examples the predicate of the Amplification occurs in a different form because the amplification is in the predicate.

2. Mode, mood and aspect must match in both Bases.
3. The Statement is not necessarily completely repeated in the Amplification.

4. Deep grammar encodes as paraphrase.

5. Either subject, object, location, time or predicate of the Statement is amplified in the Amplification, and any of these excepting predicate may be stated as additional information in the Amplification.

6. Intonation is usually a falling contour on predicate of both Bases.

7. Only a non-predicative clause in Base 2 has been observed following a non-predicative clause in Base 1.

Examples: Amplification Sentence

1. Pa ^ P'a

\[ \text{tana ho-o-ba-na } / \text{modari to-o-ha } / \text{zuta} \]
\[ \text{word speak-cont-he.per-chs others do-cont-they.per likeness} \]

\[ \text{to-o-ha typaista} \]
\[ \text{do-cont-they.per what.they.would.be.doing} \]

'(When he sang out) the others did it, they practiced what they would be doing.'

2. Pa ^ Pax

\[ \text{mete pi karona spata na-ema } / \text{Omuholory} \]
\[ \text{and he other.side this.at neg-come Omu.people.and} \]

\[ \text{Omuholory Havahataholo-ra reisika na-ema } / \text{(mete ev Ruku.people.and Havahata.people's place.at neg-come and here} \]
\[ \text{amun na-ema} \]
\[ \text{also neg-come} \]

'He didn't come over there, he didn't come to the area belonging to the Om people and the Ruku people and the Havahata people, (and he didn't come here either).'

3. Pa ^ Pax

\[ \text{pota to-ho-ta he-gi } / \text{mpo nasikaro nasikaro pota} \]
\[ \text{this do-cont-and he-ke,per moon two two this} \]

\[ \text{to-ho-ta he-gi} \]
\[ \text{do-cont-and he-we,per} \]
This is what we were doing, for four months this is what we were doing.'

4. Pa \ P'a
/povoza va-ha / kezavo va-ha / therefore get-he.per strong get-he.per
'Therefore he got it, he got it strong.'

5. Pa \ P'a
/morega morega ivovo va-ha-pu eve / pota herisika ivovo false false water one.who got here this flesh.at water
va-ha-puho he-za-pu eve / one.who got and it here
'Here is one who received baptism falsely, one who was baptised with fleshly motives.'

6. Pa \ P'a
/tuelpela tanekangi kohati oke oraeca / naravati siks naravati twelve tanks inside there be one.side six one.side
siks pota oke oraeca/
six this there be
'There are twelve tanks inside there, on one side there are six and on the other side there are six.'

7. Pa \ P'a
/nete vono // eve Gazili reiha vono na Zev reiha and nothing here name place.at nothing or name place.at
vono na Aivar reiha vono // nothing or name place.at nothing
'But there are none, here at the Gazili place there are none and at Zev place there are none, and at Aivar place there are none.'

8. gP \ sP
/povoza pi katevo na-ngo-o-ha / Ravei pi ne katevo therefore he advice me-tell-cont-he.per name he I advice
na-ngo-o-ha / me-tell-cont-he.per
9. \( Pa < Pa \)

\[
\text{mete} \text{ pomkara gyota epata beza/} \quad \text{rabevoza gyota kesata gogc}
\]
\[\text{and this, at's work this be} \quad \text{rubber's work strong work}\]
\[
\text{andangil ritou ta-ta beza/} \quad \text{other pass 40-and be}
\]

'And there the work is this, rubber work is hard work, it is harder than any other work.'

6.1.2.4 Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence is characterized by Base 1 which is Negative, Followed by Base 2 which is Positive, optionally linked by the Adversative \( \text{ong 'but'} \).

**Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base 1</th>
<th>Adversative</th>
<th>Base 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative Cl</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stative Cl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent Neg Cl</td>
<td>( \text{ong 'but'} )</td>
<td>Independent Ind Cl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative Cl</td>
<td></td>
<td>(prohibitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate 2 S</td>
<td></td>
<td>Imperative Cl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraphrase</td>
<td>( \wedge )</td>
<td>( \wedge )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>( \text{F}a )</td>
<td>( \text{F}ax' )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. The subject of the Negative and the Positive is the same.

2. \( \text{ong} \) is an optional link but it is far less likely to occur in free text in this sentence type than in an Antithetical Sentence. The occurrence of \( \text{mete 'and'} \) is rare in this sentence type.

3. Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence differs from Antithetical Sentence in:
   a) Exponents are restricted in Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence but not in Antithetical Sentence.
b) They encode differently in the deep grammar.
c) Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence has the same subject in both bases but Subject in Antithetical Sentence can be same or different.

4. A Sentence in Base 1 must have a final negative predicate or a negative predicate in both bases. A prohibitive predicate in Base 1 is followed by a positive imperative predicate in Base 2. A Stative Clause in the Negative must have an adjective indicating a negative state, and is followed by a Stative Clause in the Positive which has an antonym of the adjective of the Negative.

5. Deep grammar is paraphrase and contrast. Contrast is an unusual encoding in the deep grammar and example 8 is the only one which has been observed. All other examples encode as Paraphrase.

6. All the Negative is not necessarily paraphrased in the Positive, i.e., a temporal in the Negative may not necessarily be repeated in the Positive.

7. The Positive may add information not included in Negative.

Examples: Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence

1. /zeira hama epesisi na-yereva / ogare parumatatiana
   place this.at neg-arrive down.there their.at.only
   he-ha
   be-they.per
   'They had not come to this place, they were at their own place.'

2. / rei ngervo na-ka / rei kila ho-gi
   we word neg-speak we quiet be-we.per
   'We didn't speak, we were quiet.'

3. / gogetara kaeeve ravo-tu / ong ni tinama gogota
   work.5or dislike become-pro but you will.only work
   to-o-ke
   do-cont-you.imp
   'Do not dislike work, but work well.'

4. /pi poraha ongapa na-vete / pi pepapumanga karara uii
   he that.time at GO3 negdiscard he father.with together tie
   ta-ta he-ha
   do-add be-he.per
'At that time he did not desert God, he was united with the father.'

5. /havevoza rarihama nga eke sa-ta havevuna et
sea.for we.from someone there go-and sea.at oye
na-re // umumu he-gi
neg-break ignorant we-we.per

'Not one of us had been to see the sea, we were ignorant.'

6. mete chibivoza epagona ejoka hatete-ta kosi rea
and conch.shell's word.at here.at hear-and back break
na-no-tune orah rezaha eve verewo-vai so-ho-he-i
him-give-pro all.the.time here appear-cto go-cont-im-pl

'And you will hear the conch shell and don't turn your back, but be coming here all the time.'

7. (ongapu nima kezavvoza bome-ta nina na-mge-gi
God your strength.about think-and you.to you-tell-we.per
povvo ) / e-ite-tume / pekeve e-gi-ke
therefore us-discard-pro now us-help-you.imp

'(Lord, we think about your strength and are praying therefore)
don't cast us aside, help us.'

8. Pax

/paru wa-opatam reina damimita reina izara
they midnight our ancestor.dance our grandparent.and

nomora bapara iriepatahamanga nata na-ura / iriepatahamangata
mother and father's.down.there.from none neg-hit down.there.from
alizaro uro-o-ha

day.time hit-cont.they.per

'They did not dance our ancestors' dance, the one from down there, at night, but they danced it during the day.'
6.1.2.5 Reason Sentence has at least two Bases optionally linked by povaza 'therefore'.

Reason Sentence =

+Base \( B \)

**Reason**

\( \rightarrow \) **Result**

\( \) **Conjunction**

\( \) **Result**

Independent CI

povaza

’therefore’

Independent CI

Series S

listing S

hezaova

heza

(imperfect aspect)

(imperative mood)

Efficient Cause

\( P \land P \)

\( Q \)

Negative Purpose

\( (P \circ Q) \land P \land P \circ P \)

Notes:
1. Non-predicative clauses do not occur in either Base.
2. The final predicate of the Reason is either independent mood with imperfect aspect or Imperative mood (prohibitive) followed by heza/ hezaova. These are permitted to co-occur in one sentence without any apparent difference in meaning. Imperfect aspect plus heza/hezaova means 'because...' whereas the prohibitive suffix plus hezaova (heza does not occur) means 'lest...'. Ellipsis of the heza in hezaova frequently occurs. Thus ngodotu hezaova can be ngodotumavozza, and ngadapane hezaova can be ngadapanetavozza. See Examples S and 6.
3. The Reason of Reason Sentence does not actually happen, and it is undesirable that it should happen.
4. There are no aspect mood or mode restrictions in Base 2.
5. As many as eight occurrences of Base 1 optionally linked by ma 'or' have been seen. This is not considered to be an embedded Alternative Sentence because:
   a) ma is used as linkage in many areas of the grammar
   b) In an Alternative Sentence ma is obligatory
   c) Base 1 is unique in its grammatical structure and meaning.

6. poveza frequently does not occur.

7. The order of the Bases is reversible. If they are reversed so that Base 1 is sentence final, that sentence cannot embed in another sentence type.

8. Intonation is rising in Base 1 and falling in Base 2.

9. Reason Sentence differs from Circumstance Result Sentence in that:
   a) obligatory conjunction versus optional conjunction
   b) Occurrence of *hesaviza/heza* as part of the predicate of Reason.
   This occurs in no other sentence type.

10. A Series in Reason must have imperfect aspect in the final predicate plus *heza/hesaviza*.

11. Imperfect aspect in the predicate of Reason encodes as Efficient Cause in the deep grammar (see examples 1-4) and prohibitive predicate in Reason tagmeme encodes as Negative Purpose in the deep grammar (see examples 5-8).

12. An independent Indicative Clause with imperfect aspect in the predicate also occurs with hesaviza. This form is not dependent as clauses with heza and hesaviza are and it has no other sentence Base with it. It means 'Certainly it will ...'.

Examples: Reason Sentence

1. (mate makena poveza) ne kuta to-ma hesaviza/ no 2
   gogota kuta ta-ma heza/ ma ne vulopu manaviza
   work ignorant do-l.imp be or I pig about.giving.to,then
   kuta to-ma heza/ ta-te mete be wapiama he-ma
   ignorant do-l.imp be do-end and I nothing,only be-l.imp
   heza/ vulopu vona he-ma heza/ ma ne avasi vulopu zora yspa
   be pig none be-l.imp be or I garden none-one yam.end.taro
   na ngi de-pu he-ma heza/ ma gina ngomo-ma heza/na
   not.planting.one be-l.imp be or hunger die-l.imp be
6. /suuvo ozouro-tuna-vo-ra / rab mara nguvangi baronga-ta
   milk capsize-pro-qual-for rubber branch runners put.in-and
   vi-ama-ha
   / put-cont-they.per

   'Lest the (rubber) milk capsize, they put sticks in it.'

7. /ema-ta itsingadeka pgaah-ta ngomo-tuna bezavoz// povoza
   come-and fire.in burn-and die-pro be therefore
   akaha tittaka pataeka menge-he-na he-ha //
   up.there to.the.side different.place sent-1.per-chs be-they.per

   'Lest they come into the fire and burn themselves and die I sent
   them over to a different place and there they stayed.'

8. /haopatano e-meno-tuna bezavoz/ ma e-meno-tuna bezavoz/
   midnight us-hit-pro be or us-hit-pro be door
   viza demo-o-gi-puho /
   door bima-cont-we.per-ss

   'At midnight, lest they kill us or lest they kill us we locked the
   door.'

6.1.3 Quotation Sentences

There are two quotation sentences, Direct Quotation Sentence and
Indirect Quotation Sentence.

6.1.3.1 Direct Quotation Sentence is characterized by one obligatory
tagmeme, the Quotation, and two optional tagmemes. Base 1 optionally
precedes the Quotation, and Base 3 optionally follows the Quotation.
It is not uncommon for Bases 1 and 3 to co-occur and this adds emphasis
to the Quotation.

Direct Quotation Sentence =

#Base 1 +Base 2 #Base 3

Quotation

Pre-quote Clause word, phrase

Compound Clause Clause,

Amplification $ Sentence

Post-quote Clause
Paragraph

Discourse

Reporting

\[ W \]

\[ \wedge \] Q

Notes:

1. Base 2 is characterized by a Quotation with no adaptation of the person or aspect to the viewpoint of the speaker.

2. Base 1 and 3 must agree in person, number, aspect, mood and mode. Any person or number is permitted to occur. Both Bases are normally perfect aspect but they can be negative mood to indicate that the stated Quotation was not actually spoken. Imperative mood also occurs in Base 1 to indicate what should or should not be spoken. Imperfect aspect occurs to indicate what might be said.

3. Occasionally in narrative text both Base 1 and 3 are omitted and the intonation and context indicate the fact of the Quotation and the speaker.

4. A Compound Clause manifesting Base 1 has a Pre-quote Clause in the Final Action. An Amplification Sentence manifesting Base 1 has a 'speak' or 'think' verb in both predicates.

5. A lengthy Direct Quotation Sentence often embeds in the final Base of another sentence and the following sentence commences with 'Having said this' or similar, but one or two word quotations in Direct Quotation Sentences have been observed with dependency markers on Base 3 which link it into a Series Sentence. A non-finite form of the Post-quote Clause links the Quote into the remainder of the Compound Clause.

6. Quotations in a quoted conversation can be linked by the use of 'having said this' plus change of subject following or they can be linked by puta 'reply' or they can be simply juxtaposed but this is less common. In data observed to date two Quotations are generally linked with puta but more extensive conversation quoting is done by means of 'having said this' or a combination of both.

7. Actions such as 'answer', 'question' etc. are expressed with an Auxiliary Verb Phrase in Base 1 which includes either haza 'speak' or -nga 'tell'.

8. A series of Quotations linked by ma 'or' is the means by which a number of quotations by one speaker can be expressed. These quotations could have been spoken at one point of time or over a period of time.
9. Sentence final falling intonation usually occurs in each Base, except when Base 3 has dependency markers linking it into a Series Sentence.

10. A quote that is untrue usually has the word morega 'false' in Base 1.

Examples: Direct Quotation Sentence

1. /at a-ng-ha / "ari ha-sa-ta eme-gi" / question us-tell-they.per you certainly-go-and come-you.per

"Have you come back?" they asked us.

2. "ee rei ha-sa-ta eme-gi" /
yes we certainly-go-and come-we.per

"Yes, we have been and come back."

3. (ma-nge-gi-na )/ pi pata ,/ "tinama cte-ta zu te-l" /
   him-tell-we.per-chs he reply well.only look-and like do-im
   (pota ha-ha-na )
   this say-ge.per-chs

'We told him this and he replied, "Watch well and do the same." Having said this ...

4. (serari ema-ta ngetiyo a-nga-ha-puho )/ "sa-ka "/
   white.ones come-and story us-tell-they.per-ss go-we.imp
   Na-ha-na ...
   / say-they-per-chs

'(The white people came and told us a story) and "We will go" they said and ...

5. (reims ngaravataka vereva-hs-puho ) pota a-nga-hs // "rari
our midst.at arrive-he.per-ss that us-tell-he.per we
   tokae angargarvihi giplo ne na-ta emo-na-na-hoho verovoka
later two.women.at food I eat-and come-l.imp-chs-after midday
   poraha mariporo gogovo ta-ka "/ pots a-nga-ha /
that.time we.all work do-we.imp that us-tell-he.per

'He arrived in our midst and told us this, "Later at midday, after I have eaten with the two women, I will come and we will work", that is what he told us,'
6. "poviza ari oke nema sikura ahana oke rave-pike"
   therefore you there my school men there become-you.imp
   pota ha-ha
   that say-he.per
   "Therefore you will become my pupils." he said.'

7. //misisp per ha-ha misis aus sikitakapubo
   white.woman that speak-she.per white.woman.at.the.hospital
   na-ngä-ha // "ari ogare aus sikitaka se-i"
   me-tell-she.per you down.there hospital.at go-jam-pl
   'The white woman said, the nurse at the hospital told me, "You
   go down there to the hospital."

8. //put /// upai oke ema-ta heza vatah , upai
   reply nothing there come-and be perhaps nothing
   ta-na-ha vatah //"pota hao-tma hevoviza povize eve
do-cont-she.per perhaps that say-prc lest therefore here
   na-ngo-ho //
you-tell-l.per
   '... reply, "Perhaps she is here for no reason, perhaps she has
   come and is not doing anything." Lest you say that I have told
   you this.'

6.1.3.2 Indirect Quotations:

Indirect Quotations are always changed to reflect the focus of the
reporter in regard to person. They can be expressed in one of two
ways.

a) They most commonly occur as the purpose tagmeme of a clause which
contains a speech word in the predicate. Quotations cannot be
expressed in this way, but must be expressed as a Direct Quotation
Sentence.

Example:

ne sa-ta era hora-ta 2ej potaka vereva-ta solo mangepu
I go-and go down-and place.that.at arrive-and pig feast

uwo-ma-ta ha-ohö
hit-l.imp-pur say-l.per

'1 said that I would go to that place for the pig feast.'
3) A second mode of expression has been seen but examples are few. This mode is not unlike a **Direct Quotation** Sentence. The quotation, which has been changed to reflect the focus of the speaker is followed by 'this he said' or similar. The indirect quote can also embed in an Object-like tagmem of a Pre-quote type clause. An effort to elicit further examples from an informant was unsuccessful indicating that this is an unusual way of expressing quotations.

**Examples: Indirect Quotation**

1. verbata paruma raingi ya to-ho-ta yia taira laira arrive-and their guns get do-cont-and year what what

   wona rava-ha pata a mu-nge-vai sowo-o-he finish-if-per this question them-ask-to come-cont-he-per

   'He came asking them how many years they had been policemen.'

2. Aiyura abana paru kutunuta aho rava-pane ha-ha-paho name men they might big become-it.imp say-they.per

   'The men of Aiyura said that it will become dark'

3. morega no-to-no-ho pi ha-ha-na... false him-do-cont-he.per he speak-he.per-chs

   'He said I was deceiving him and...'
6.2.1.3
Frustrative Sentence
*Wish *nak
Wish is always imperfect aspect

CHART 2 - NON-COMPLEX SENTENCE TYPES

6.2 Non-Complex sentences
Non-complex sentences are either Mini-base or Quasi-clausal.

6.2.1 Mini-base Sentences
Negative Sentence, Abilitative Sentence and Frustrative Sentence are in this group and each type has only one word in one of its Bases.

6.2.1.1 Negative Sentence is manifested by an Independent Indicative Clause or Series Sentence plus the adjective *ono 'nothing' which negates whatever precedes it in the sentence.

Negative Sentence =
*Base 1
Positive Statement
Independent Ind Cl
Series S
Resume
\[ F \]

*Base 2
Negation
ono 'nothing'

Notes:
1. Occasionally the suffix -ma 'purpose' is added to an imperfect aspect predicate in Base 1.
2. Negative Sentence is not common text material.
3. Negative Clause or a sentence with negative predicates does not occur in Base 1.
4. It seems certain that other sentences could manifest Base 1 but none have been seen.
5. Negative Sentence only embeds in the final Base of another sentence.

6. There are no aspect or mode limitations in Base 1.

7. There is no pause between the Bases.

Examples: Negative Sentence

1. /ninja-ga ari-ga ro nae na-mu, ulla ta-ta keza rava-ta he-ta you, with you, all each, other, knot do-and strong become-and be-and
   ta-me-ha / vono /
   do-cont-they.per nothing
   'They are not one with you and they are not becoming strong.'

2. /pi kasi-make zuma ta-pan / vono /
   he car buy do-he.imp nothing
   'He will not buy a car.'

3. /ne Kainantu so-na-za / vono /
   I name go-1.imp-pur nothing
   'I will not go to Kainantu.'

4. /pi ninanga aripi hone-hev hepi-kazata oko / vono /
   he you, with you, two together what you will be there nothing
   'He will not be with you two there.'

5. (so-ma-puho / zuma to-ma / vono /
   go-1.imp-pur buy do-1.imp
   'When I go) I will not buy (it).'"

6. /me te ne moja navonanga reko ha-bo-na kapota
   and I other, talk, with read speak-1, per-chs interpretation
   iza rava-ta keza / vono /
   hidden become-and be nothing
   'And I didn't read another language so the interpretation is not hidden.'
6.2.1.2 The Abilitative Sentence is manifested by the Abilitative rekota 'enough' plus a Clause or Sentence.

Abilitative Sentence =

＋Abilitative
rekota

＋Base
Independent Clause
Alternative S

Facility
fp
∧
Q

Notes:
1. Perfect or imperfect aspect and indicative or negative mood occur.

2. Abilitative Sentence can be perfect and thus it can embed in Series Sentences although few examples have been seen. It has also been observed manifesting Result in a Circumstance Result Sentence.

3. Abilitative Sentence with imperfect aspect in the Base is a polite way to ask someone to do something.

4. Few examples have been seen in free text.

5. Rekota also occurs as an adverb meaning 'enough', but it never occurs clause initial whereas in the Abilitative Sentence rekota always occurs initially. A shorter form reko occurs as an auxiliary in an Auxiliary Verb Phrase.

Examples: Abilitative Sentence

1. /rekota/ ni sa-ta gogo povo te-ke? /
   enough you go-and work this do-you.imp
   'Are you able to go and do this work?'

2. (gogo kezave eve povoza )/ rekota ne pota na-ta
   work strong here therefore enough I this neg-do
   '(It is hard work so) I am not able to do it.'

3. /rekota// pi sa-pane ma na-so-tu //
   enough he go-he.imp or neg-go-imp
   'Is he able to go or not.'
4. /rekota/ rei se-go / enough we go-we.per

'We are able to go.'

5. (narizaro ngoda-pane ñesa pevora )/ rekota/ hao-ma-na / everyone fall-they.imp be therefore enough speak-I.imp-3hs

(hateto-ripe-puho) hear-you.imp-ss

'(Because many will fail), I am able to speak (so you listen).'</n}

6.2.1.3 Frustrative Sentence is characterized by a Clause or Sentence plus the particle nak 'wish'.

Frustrative Sentence =

+Base 1

Independent Indicative Clause

Series S

(Imperfect aspect)

Frustration

iP & Pa

&

(Pa)

Notes:

1. Base 1 always has imperfect aspect in its final predicate.

2. Frustrative Sentence means, 'I wish I could ...(but I can't). Thus the deep grammar encodes as frustration.

3. Frustrative Sentence has not been observed in free text but it is common in everyday speech.

4. Frustrative Sentence cannot be made dependent and thus its embedding potential is limited. Possibly it could embed in Coordinate I Sentence or in an Antithetical Sentence.

Examples: Frustrative Sentence

1. /ne sa-ta voio mangepu ura-ta se-na / nak/

'I go-and pig feast hit-and eat-I.imp wish

'I wish I could go and celebrate the pig feast (but I can't).'
2. /pi Araboka na Saiveriha sa-pme / nak /
   he place or place go-be.imp wish
   'He wishes he could go to Araboka or to Saiveriha.'

3. /nima gogovo ta-pem / nak /
   your work do-be.imp wish
   'He wishes he could do your work.'

4. /ne-ma na-ne-ke / nak /
   mine me-give-you.imp wish
   'I wish you would give it to me.'

5. /rei poeka sa-ta aerariza no nae nae map su-da ta-ka / nak /
   we that.at go-and white.one's everything do-we.imp wish
   'We wish we could go there and buy the white peoples' things.'

6. /dei sa-ka-puho data ura-ta gipiz na-ka // nak /
   we go-we.imp ss dance hit-and food eat-we.imp wish
   'We wish we could go and dance and eat the food.'

6.2.1.4 Quasi-clausal Sentence

The only quasi-clausal sentence is Simple Sentence. Simple
Sentence has only one Base filled by any Independent Clause with
sentence final intonation. In speech deletion of part of the sentence
is common, leaving a word or phrase only. Interrogative words,
exclamations or conjunctions also occur with sentence final intonation
in conversation.

Sentence periphery occur with Simple Sentence when that sentence
is manifested by a Clause but not when it is manifested by something
less than a Clause.

Examples:

1. /eroma / taka se-ke-za / nae-ngi /
   hey man where go-you.imp-pur come-you.per
   'Man! Where are you going?'

2. /pete ve pisiniwoganga reko ha-obo
   now Pidgin.with read-1.per
   'Just now I read in Pidgin.'
3. /rinma nodaranzoza toni oke home na-ne / our "other.xes" we there think neg.put

'We didn't think about our relatives.'

6.3 Sentence periphery

Sentence periphery includes five pre-nuclear tagmemes and two post-nuclear tagmemes.

Pre-nuclear periphery:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#Vocative</th>
<th>#Exclamation</th>
<th>#Evaluation</th>
<th>#Conjunction</th>
<th>#Tail.head Recapitulation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=ae, siu</td>
<td>=tina</td>
<td>=povoza</td>
<td>=na</td>
<td>Recapitulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;hey!&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;good&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=susa</td>
<td>=evo</td>
<td>=ong</td>
<td>=ong mete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;surprise&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;no&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>=ong mete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=peti</td>
<td>=ee, el</td>
<td>=mete</td>
<td>=mete povoza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;perhaps&quot;</td>
<td>=egu 'yes'</td>
<td></td>
<td>=mete povoza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=maize</td>
<td>=morega &quot;yes&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;oh oh,&quot;</td>
<td>=false&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=au</td>
<td>=ong mete</td>
<td>=ong mete</td>
<td>=ong mete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;mistake&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>=mete povoza</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=apeti</td>
<td>=nai takepi</td>
<td>=mete povoza</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;one name&quot;</td>
<td>=sorry&quot;</td>
<td>=mete povoza</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=pe 'so'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=cirt 'fear'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Vocative has been observed between Sentence Bases, and also following the nucleus. The order of Vocative and Exclamation is not fixed.
2. Conjunctions included all those described as Sentence Base linkage. As Sentence Introducers they show relationship to previous Sentence in the Paragraph. Behavioural Discourse uses those Sentence Introducers consistently but in other discourse types it is more common for Recapitulation with or without mete "and" to occur as linkage.
3. The clause in Tail.head Recapitulation must have a predicate which is dependent or non-finite. Occasionally this tagmem adds information not previously stated.
4. A reply to an interrogative type question has its own unique introducer, evo 'no', followed by the information requested. An interrogative type question implies wrong doing thus the defensive evo which begins the reply. If the reply is 'I don't know' then evo is not used.

5. Vocative does not co-occur with Recapitulation and lexically it is not possible for it to co-occur with some exclamations. Generally Exclamation and Evaluation do not co-occur and they do not co-occur with Recapitulation. Evaluation can co-occur with Conjunction and the conjunction mene frequently occurs with Recapitulation.

6. Evaluation tagmeme occasionally occurs post-nuclear but it seems unlikely that all exponents of it could occur there.

Post-nuclear periphery=

#Uncertainty
vatah

'perhaps'

#Exclamation
mai zakepi

'sorry'

Notes:
1. The two Post-nuclear periphery do not co-occur.
2. Uncertainty is included in the sentence final falling intonation. Exclamation has a separate falling intonation contour.

Examples of Sentence Periphery. Periphery is indicated by / .

1. redewo / mengova naapu ni / naapu abahaza
decoration and spell's owner you only one sky on for

'You, the owner of spells and beauty, you are the only one in the sky...'

2. Apetai / taeka no-paine
name sake where go we dual im

'Name sake, where will we go?'

3. ae / cema/ eve oma
hey man here come

'Hey man, come here.'
4. /auma/ rei potana eta na-re / surprise we this.at eye neg-break
'Great scott! We haven't seen this.'

5. /ne hamaraha lae sa-ta gogovo to-na / vatah / I ground.on Lae go-and work do-T.lmp perhaps
'Perhaps I will walk to Lae and get work.'

6. Nanei / oma-ta ne-ngitsa/ older.brother come-and help-me
'Come and help me, brother.'

7. ("tarapu ema-ha") / 'evo/ ne gogovo tama-ras emo-ho" / who came-he.per no I work do-T.lmp-per come-T.per
'Who are you?' "No, I am just coming to work.'

8. /tina/ ne zai to-ho / good I like do-T.per
'Good, I like it.'

9. /emgarim/ mete taek no-o-npi / woman, and where go-cont-you.per
'And woman, where have you been?'
6.4 Examples of embedding:

1. mafe paraparuma hodoye unuma - he knows
   and they all? knowledge ignorant only
   paraparuma hodoye pen ya in ya basi te-te
   they all knowledge this mixed up
   ta-na-hu
dis-cont-they.re quaternion

paraparuma hodoye pen ya in ya basi te-te
they all knowledge this mixed up

2. hodoye unuma
   unuma ma-nya tamashaniza pesu ne-ghan-ta
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

3. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

4. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

5. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

6. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

7. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

8. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

9. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
   winshoko
   who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

10. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
    winshoko
        who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

11. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
    winshoko
        who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

12. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
    winshoko
        who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

13. poda nga nga mba abahakata keta
    winshoko
        who forget now them-help and

paraparuma logori ya nga nga mba abahakata keta
they all inside Ya God your sky all strong your

"But they are all without knowledge and they are all mixed up, therefore, lord, new, at this time, you help the men who are doing badly and ignorantly and become their caretaker and send your strength down and make them turn their lives to you again, and turn their flesh and make them good, so that they will become your people again or what did I think and openly tell you, God."
2. onggu niho e-te-ta
   God you look-and
   Compound C1
   be-ta
   be-pre
   hiho kereren eza-te
   you caretaker become-and
   Base 2
   Coordinate 2 S
   Compound C1
   be-za
   be-pre
   powora oraka-te
   therefore sleep-exp-pur do-we-im-pas
   Base 1 - Series
   Series 5
   Compound C1
   nima niho e-te-ta
   God base strength about think-and
   Compound C1
   nima sa-nge-gi
   you to you-tell-we-per
   powora e-vete-tone
   therefore un-discard-ing-exp
   Negative
   Base 3 - Consequence
   Result
   Compound C1
   narn e-geza-ke
   neg you help you-exp
   Base 2 S
   Neg Pos Antithetical S
   'Lord you are watching you are taking care of us, therefore when we are about to sleep Lord we think about your strength and we speak to you, therefore do not desert us but rather help us.'

3. narn narnu sa-ka-me
   my mother go-sha-per-sha
   Base 2 - Series
   Base 2 - Series
   se goggo tina te-to-xing
   I work well do-1 per-Th
   Prototype
   nana arrest
   Base 1 - Series
   Basa 1 - Series
   "tina te-go" nana-ha
   will do-it-per BE-101 she.per would
   Basa 2 - Consequence
   Coordinate 1 S
   mite se goggo tina ha-ta
   and I work well neg-do
   'When my mother went, if I had worked well she would have said, "You did well", but I did not work well.'
"We people all became good and listened to his name, took communion, were baptised and stood strong for him and and the hard things and became strong, therefore now speaking his name we say, Our leader, Jesus, will be helping us."
6.5 Summary of mapping of Deep Structures on Surface Structures

The sentence types listed on the right indicate the various surface structure encodings of each deep structure. An example of each of these is not necessarily included in this chapter.

I Conjoining

1. Coupling

- \( Pa \land Qa \)
- \( P \land Q \)
- \( P(a) \lor P(b) \)
- \( P^a \land P^y \land ... Pan \)
- \( P \land Q \land ... \forall \)
- \( P(a) \land Q(b) \)
- \( P^a \land P^y \land P^x \)
- \( Pab \land Pac \land Pan \)
- \( Pa \lor Qb \)

Alternative
Coordinate 2
Coordinate 1
Listing
Coordinate 1
Coordinate 2
Alternative
Antithetical
Coordinate 1
Listing
Coordinate 2

2. Contrast

- \( Pa \land Qb \)
- \( Pa \land P"b \)
- \( Pa \land \overline{Pb} \)
- \( \overline{Pax} \land Pay \)
- \( \overline{Pax} \land Pax" \)
- \( Pac \land Phd \)
- \( \overline{Pab} \land Pab" \)
- \( Pa \land Pb \)
- \( P(U - a) \land Pa \land (a \in U) \)
- \( P(U - a) \land P(a) \land (a \in U) \)

Antithetical
Coordinate 2
Antithetical
Listing
Antithetical
Coordinate 1
Negative Positive Antithetical
Coordinate 1
Antithetical
Coordinate 1
Antithetical
Alternative
3. Comparison
   Pa < Pa

II Paraphrase
1. Affirmation
   (1) Identity Equivalence
       Pa ∧ P'a
       Pa ∧ Pa'
       P̄a ∧ P'a
       Alternative Amplification
       Amplification
       Antithetical
   (2) Generic-Specific
       p^P ∧ sP
       Amplification
   (3) Facility
       fP ∧ Q
       Abilitative
   (4) Statement-Specification
       Pa ∧ Pab
       Pa ∧ Pax
       Alternative Amplification

2. Negated Antonym
   P^P'a ∧ Pa
   Negative Positive Antithetical
   Coordinate 1
   Coordinate 2
   Alternative

III Temporal
1. Overlap
   (1) Coterminal
       P ∧ Q
       P ∧ Q ∧ R
       Coordinate 1
       Coordinate 2
       Series
   (2) Continuous-Punctiliar
       P ∧ Q ∧ ... ∧ N
       Series
   (3) Punctiliar-Continuous
       P ∧ Q
       Series
(4) Punctiliar-Continuous-Punctiliar and Succession Combination
\[ P \land Q \land \ldots \land N \land \bar{N} \] Series
\[ F \land P \land Q \land \ldots \bar{N} \] Series

2. Succession

(1) Span-event
\[ P \land Q \] Series
Coordinate 2

(2) Event-event
\[ P \land Q \] Series
Coordinate 1
\[ P \land Q \land \ldots \bar{N} \] Series
Coordinate 2

(3) Event-span
\[ P \land Q \] Series

(4) Span-span
\[ P \land Q \] Coordinate 1

(5) Span-event Combination
\[ P \land Q \land Q \land Q \land \ldots \land N \land \bar{N} \] Series

IV Implication

1. Realization

(1) Contrafactual
\[ P \land (P \land Q) \land (P \land Q) \] Contrafactual

2. Frustration

(1) Expectancy Reversal
\[ (P \land Q) \land P \land Q \land \bar{Q} \] Coordinate 1

(2) Conflicting Premises
\[ (P \land Q) \lor (R \land \bar{Q}) \land P \land R \] Antithetical

(3) Mistake Idea
\[ Q \land P \land Q \] Coordinate 1
3. Causation
   (1) Efficient Cause
       \[ P \land P \supset Q \]  
       Reason  
       Result  
       Series  
   (2) Intent
       \[ \neg P a \land Pa \land (\neg Pa) \]  
       Frustrative

4. Negative Purpose
   \[ (P_\beta \supset Q) \land P \land P \supset P_\beta Q \]  
   Reason

V Alternation
1. With excluded middle (exclusive disjunction)
   (1) By antony
       \[ Pa \lor P' a \]  
       Alternative
   (2) By negation
       \[ Pa \lor \neg a \]  
       Alternative

2. Without excluded middle (inclusive disjunction)
   \[ Pa \lor P a \lor P a \lor a \]  
   Alternative  
   \[ Pa \lor P a \lor P a \lor a \]  
   Alternative  
   \[ Pa \lor P a \lor P a \lor a \]  
   Alternative

VI Reporting
1. Speech
   \[ wP \land Q \]  
   Direct Quotation  
   Indirect Quotation

2. Resume
   \[ \neg P \land \neg P \neg Q \]  
   Negative
7. PARAGRAPHS

7.0 Introduction

A Kunimaipa paragraph is defined as a construction in the grammatical hierarchy between Sentence and Discourse level and its nucleus consists of at least two grammatical sentences.

On the lower levels of the grammatical hierarchy different types of constructions are described solely on the basis of distinct grammatical features. With the paragraphs, however, while there are grammatical features, they are less common and not always as easily recognised, and so this analysis and description depends on the lexical and phonological features which also occur.

A general description of the type of linkage which occurs within the paragraph is given first. Then paragraph types and the pertinent features of each are described, accompanied by a bidimensional array which shows in a precise manner the tagmemes which occur. Items which could be considered as periphery and described once for all paragraphs, are included, where relevant, as part of the particular paragraph because they tend to be expounded by different items with different paragraph types.

Features which have been considered in analysing and describing paragraphs are the distribution of the paragraph in discourse, optional versus obligatory tagmemes, the fillers which manifest each tagmeme, the way in which the tagmemes are held together in the paragraph, deep structure relationships, and the potential for expansion within the paragraph.

Paragraphs most typically manifest discourse tagmemes but they also embed in other paragraphs and occasionally manifest sentence bases.

Sentences and paragraphs are often distinguished from each other by the intonation contours which occur. Typically sentences have a high-low final falling intonation contour. Thus a rising or high-mid falling intonation at the end of a clause (or embedded sentence) followed by a conjunction indicates that the conjunction is functioning as sentence linkage, whereas a high-low falling contour at the end of a clause or sentence followed by a conjunction indicates that the conjunction is functioning as paragraph linkage.

This description of paragraphs is tentative and it is expected that study of further data would refine the analysis and enlarge the lists of tagmeme exponents.

7.1 Linkage within the Paragraph

Paragraphs in general match Discourse level tagmemes, so lexical and grammatical items marking new tagmemes on the discourse level also
indicate a new paragraph. Paragraphs are held together by recapitula-
tion, conjunctions, juxtaposition or by paragraph and sentence overlap.
(See d), below). Other factors which are relevant in holding paragraphs
together are repetition of the same predicate, aspect, and mode, the
latter two because they either remain the same throughout the paragraph
or else change in a systematic way which is typical of that particular
paragraph.

a) Recapitulation is of the final verb of the previous sentence
or of all or part of the final clause of the previous
sentence. Occasionally additional information is added in the
recapitulation. Whichever variety of recapitulation occurs
the recapitulating verb occurs in a non-finite or dependent
form.
Recapitulation occurs most commonly in Narrative Discourse
as a factor in holding the paragraph together, but it also
occurs in all other discourse types.

b) Conjunctions are those which also occur as internal sentence
linkage. When they occur in the periphery preceding the
sentence nucleus they join that sentence to the previous
sentence. It is not unusual for two or three different
conjunctions to link sentences in the same paragraph. Factors
which are relevant in separating senteneces which are linked
by conjunctions from paragraphs which are linked in the same
way are described under the appropriate paragraph type.

c) Juxtaposed sentences are considered to be in the same paragraph
if the predicate in both sentences is the same, if the
sentences link logically as part of the same topic, or if there
is another cohesive factor present and no marker indicating a
new paragraph.

d) It is not unusual for the linkage which occurs in Series
Sentences to also act as linkage for paragraphs which are part
of the sequence of events. When this occurs the first tagmeme
of the paragraph manifests the final Base of one Series
Sentence and subsequent tagmemes of the paragraph manifest the
first Base of the following Series Sentence, without recapitu-
lation occurring. The linkage between the paragraph tagmemes
is whatever is typical of the particular paragraph. This is a
cohesive factor in Narrative Discourse (see 8.1). And only
short paragraphs do this. Longer paragraphs tend to have the
first tagmeme in the first Base of a Series Sentence but the
following tagmeme or tagmemes of the paragraph do not link as
part of the following Series Sentence. Instead there is a
sentence break at the end of the paragraph and the following
sentence begins with Tail-head recapitulation from the end of
the paragraph.
e) A temporal in each tagmeme of the Time Contrast Paragraph is a cohesive factor in holding the paragraph together.

Embedding of one paragraph within another is common in which case the embedded paragraph is linked by whatever is typical of that paragraph type, and the larger paragraph is held together in the way that is typical for that paragraph type.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>Modeling Type</th>
<th>7.2.2.8</th>
<th>7.2.2.6</th>
<th>7.2.2.4</th>
<th>7.2.2.2</th>
<th>7.2.2.1</th>
<th>7.2.2.3</th>
<th>7.2.2.5</th>
<th>7.2.2.7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Descriptive</td>
<td>Statement</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relational</td>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposition</td>
<td>Place</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execution Pa</td>
<td>Event</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed</td>
<td>Proposed</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunction</td>
<td>Conjunction</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Situational</td>
<td>Same verb</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Contrast</td>
<td>Time Contrast</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition Pa</td>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relation</td>
<td>Related</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspect</td>
<td>Aspect</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent</td>
<td>Dependent</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.3</td>
<td>Inheritance</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.4</td>
<td>Coordination</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.6</td>
<td>Dialogue Pa</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.1</td>
<td>Dialogue Pa</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.2</td>
<td>Dialogue Pa</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.5</td>
<td>Dialogue Pa</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2.7</td>
<td>Dialogue Pa</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The table above represents a partial listing of grammatical structures and their modeling types. The specific columns and rows indicate the relationships and dependencies between different grammatical elements.
7.2 Paragraph Types

Paragraphs in Kunimaipa fall into two categories, those which are complex and which manifest Discourse level tagsmnes, and those which are non-complex and which generally embed in other paragraphs. Narrative, Behavioural and Descriptive Paragraphs are complex, and are potentially very long. Relational, Time Contrast, Identical Predicate, Coordinate, Exposition and Dialogue Paragraphs are simpler in structure and are usually short and embed in other paragraphs.

7.2.1 Complex Paragraph Types

Setting and Terminus optionally occur and tagsmnes are expounded equally by paragraphs and sentences. These three paragraphs do not usually embed in each other.

7.2.1.1 Narrative Paragraph

The Narrative Paragraph tends to be very long and predominantly manifests Episodes in Narrative Discourse but it also occurs in other discourse types. Linkage is only by Tail-head recapitulation and the order of events is generally chronological. Non-chronological ordering of events is described in Chapter 8.1.5.

There are three tagsmnes which occur in Narrative Paragraphs. Setting and Terminus are optional but nuclear in that they are expounded in different ways to Setting and Terminus in other paragraph types. Build-up is obligatory and also nuclear and has been observed to occur from one to 25 times. Commonly ten or eleven occur. Build-up is frequently manifested by a Series Sentence the first Base of which has the recapitulation which links that sentence to the preceding one in the paragraph. Series Sentences are often long but speakers vary in how long they choose to make sentences. Recapitulation never occurs at the beginning of a Narrative Paragraph.

Build-ups are often manifested by Direct Quotation Sentences which fit into the sequence of events. This Direct Quotation Sentence can contain a request which is carried out after the recapitulation in the following Build-up by different actor. A Direct Quotation Sentence can also be followed by a reply and if both occur within one Series Sentence or in successive Build-ups linked by recapitulation they are not considered to be a Dialogue Paragraph but are part of the Narrative Paragraph.

Occasionally the conjunction nete 'and' precedes the recapitulation link between two sentences and is considered to be a type of discourse level focus marker.

Deep structure is only succession.
Narrative Paragraph

*Setting + (Build-up)^n=1-25 *Terminus

temporal Simple Sentence SS
Simple S Series Sentence Neg Pos Anti S Id Pred Pa
Relational Pa Descriptive Pa

Setting tagme is usually a Simple Sentence but is sometimes manifested by the first Base of the first sentence of the paragraph. This tagme frequently sets the time for the paragraph by a statement such as 'Next day when it got light', 'When it got dark' or 'When I hurt my leg'. A temporal manifesting Setting manifests Time tagme in the first clause and always occurs clause initial. The conjunction *me* 'and' optionally precedes the setting.

The Terminus tagme is a Simple Sentence or the final Base of the final tagme of the final Build-up. It usually says, 'we slept'.

Aspect and mode occurrences are described under Narrative Discourse, chapter 8.1.0 and 8.1.1.

Examples: Narrative Paragraph

1. Setting: Clause

   aie tekana
   light broke.1t.chs

   BU 1: Series Sentence

   xiri ase meval tibivo menahana reiparo manjepora dasi
   warning shall hit.be.chs we.all prayer-and song
   hagipuho hegl.
   spoke.w.e.ss be.we

   BU 2: Series Sentence

   hets ari paru tekana ne rang nanepura aungapunanga akaha
   be.and they were.they.chs I brother.and wife.will up.there

   Homena roho.
   Homena went.1
BU 3: Series Sentence
sata guzungi vegipuho mgota zeitaka.
go.and pandanus.nuts got.we.ss again place.at

BU 4: Series Sentence
emata hegipuho emata hegina rayahana
come.and were.we.ss came.and were.we.chs became.it.chs

Terminus: Clause
oregi.
slept.we

'When it got light in the morning, he blew the conch shell and we all gathered for devotions and then sat around. We sat around and they stayed (at the village) and I went up to Homena with my brother and his wife. We went and got pandanus nuts and then came back to the village. We came and waited and it got dark and we slept.'

2. The following example has two statements about time sentence medial which indicates that speakers are free to initiate a new paragraph if they wish when there is a time change but they are not obliged to.

Setting: Clause
zeirevai ale tehana
tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: Clause
reiparo segi.
we.all went.we

BU 2: Simple Sentence
Regirei ravara soheta okoha Gubarserevata
Regirei ridge go.cont.and down.there Gubar arrive.and
era horegi.
went.down.we

BU 3: Series Sentence
era horegina pookarizaro mapo hasohana
went.down.we.chs those.at.that.place all cert.went.they.chs
reiparo sata horegina abanapusa abatavo Etavai pl
we.all go.and went.down.we.chs man's name Etavai go
heha.
was.he

BU 4: Series Sentence with Direct Quotation Sentences in two of its Bases.
reiparo boregina pota hahu, "Taira tuavo sepake?
we.all went.down.we.chs this said.he what shame go.will.you
hepkena ne vole napa ura anoana ariparo
be.will.you.chs I pig one hit you.give.will.1.chs you.all
sepikemuboho zeirevai sepake" nahana "gu"
et.will.you.ss.after tomorrow go.will.you said.he.chs yes
mangata reiparo heg.
him.told.and we.all were.we

BU 5: Series Sentence
hegina hapanevazai ravahana volopu emahana
were.we.chs afternoon became.it.chs pig came.it.chs
reiparo volopu wra anaha.
we.all pig hit us.gave.he

BU 6: Series Sentence
ura anahana varengata nohota hegina kuturu
hit us.gave.he.chs cooked.and ate.cont.and hegen.were.we.chs night
ravahana reiparo siangi verenga rezata kuturutaka
became.it.chs we.all headdress put.on.and night.at
dato urogi.
dance hit.cont.we

BU 7: Series Sentence
urohota hegina ale tehana zeirevai
hit.cont.and were.we.chs light broke.it.and tomorrow
valahata segi.
got.up.and went.we

BU 8: Simple Sentence
sata helata Zairap zeihahoe virasi tita poekahoe
go.and climb.and Zairap place.at decorate so.and there.at
ali ana dapu menegi.
day.time dance hit.we

BU 9: Series Sentence
dapu menegipuho urogina hapanezai revahang
dance hit.we.ss hit.cont.we.chs afternoon became.it.chs

tita sa hegina ngol giv vaha.
leave.and go were.we.chs food got.they

BU 10: Series Sentence
ngol giv vahana rei nobota
food got.they.chs we eat.cont.and

Terminus: Clause
orata hegi.
sleep.and were.we

'The next day when it got light we all went. We went to Regirei and went on and came to Gahur and went down there. We went down and the people there had all gone so when we went down there was only a man called Stavai there. We all went down and he said, "Why should you be embarrassed and leave? Stay and I will kill a pig and give it to you and after you've eaten, tomorrow, you can go", he said, and "Yes" (we) told him and we stayed. We stayed and when it was afternoon the pig came and he killed and gave it to us. Having killed and given it to us, we cooked and ate it and when it got dark we put on our headaddresses and danced. While we were dancing it got light and that day we got up and went. We went and climbed up to 2airap and put on our decorations and there we danced in the day time. We danced and when it was afternoon we left off and waited and they gave us food. Having given us food we ate and slept.'

3. This example shows several examples of a request: being given in a Direct Quotation Sentence which manifests the final Base of a Series Sentence in one Build-up. This request is carried out in the following Build-up, after the recapitulation.

Setting: Clause
nema engasina nga thopuho
ny leg.with did.T.ss
BU 1: Series Sentence
sata ogare aus sikitaka hehane nisipu pota
go and down there hospital at was. I chs white woman this
haha nisipu aus sikitakapho mangaha "ari ogare
said she white woman nurse sub me told she you up there
aus sikitaka sei". hospital at go. pl

BU 2: Series Sentence
pota hahanal rei nape valashag'pho aus sikitaka segi.
this said he chs we ali got up we. as hospital at went. we

BU 3: Series Sentence
aus sikitaka segina aus sikitakangava popuho reima
hospital at went we chs hospital at woman that. sub our
tepae vahapuho steta haha "toutei"
paper go she. rs look and said. she sit. pl

BU 4: Series Sentence
pota hahanal rei tautaca segi rei ngervo naka
this said she. chs we sit and were. we we talk no speak
rei kila segi
we quiet were. we

"When I hurt my leg I went down to the hospital and waited
and the white woman said, the white woman at the hospital told me,
"You go up to the hospital!" She said this and we all got up and
went up to the hospital. We went to the hospital and the woman
there took our papers and looked at them and said, "Sit down". She
said this and we sat down, we didn't speak, we sat quietly.

4. Setting: Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence
mete zereva rei skurutaka naiokya rei ama Ingdoham
and tomorrow we school at no. enter we just outside only
hegi.
stay. we

BU 1: Series Sentence
hegina Ovewananga ngari ang moda napa eaha.
were. we chs Oba. from another. young woman came. she
BU 2: Series Sentence

*begina* Wantostihananga nangarivi napu endaha.
*were.wa.chs* Wantost from* two* came.they

BU 3: Series Sentence with Relational Paragraph

*begina*
*were.wa.chs*

Statement: Simple Sentence

*sande* povo vona taha.
Sunday that none did.it

Link:

*mete*

Statement: Simple Sentence

*vangotaka kap* tata *skurutaka lokogi.*
Sunday at begin do and school entered we

BU 4: Descriptive Paragraph

Setting: Simple Sentence

*reeine* skuru* pota lokogi.*
our school this entered cont we

Step 1: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Coordinate 1 Sentence

8 *kirik* lokogi mete garosi angomainanga
8 o'Clock entered cont we and first mother with

Matiura gogovo togi.
Matthew's work did cont we

Link:

*mete*

and

Statement: Series Sentence

9.30 *vono* tata mete misis Bergman sohana
9.30 none do and and Mrs. Bergman went cont she chs
mte tisa meninipiranga Aposoloza pogovo and teacher Nemmlinpi.witi Acts.for work
togi Poloza ngativo povoza pogovo. did.cont.we Paul's story that for work

Link:
mte and

Statement: Simple Sentence
10.30 roi verevata gisapu varainganegi.
10.30 we came.out.and sun warmed.we

Link:
mte and

Statement: Alternative Sentence
maota lokata sinavita managavosa pogovo togi again entered church first for work did.cont.we
ma zarevota pogovo togi ma sanda skuruza or number for work did.cont.we or Sunday school's
pogovo togi. work did.cont.we

Link:
mte and

Statement: Simple Sentence
12 kirok skuruza vono tata verevengi.
12 o'clock school none do. and came.out.we

Step 2: Series Sentence
verevata mte gisizo nogi mte begina 1.30
came.out.and and food ate.cont.we and were.we.chs 1.30
tohuna mte reima itihaveza sogi mte did.cont.it.chs and our wood for went.cont.we and
'The next day we didn't start school, we just stayed outside. While we waited a girl came from Gube. While we waited two girls came from Nantoat. We waited around and Sunday was over. On Monday we started school. This is what we did at school. At 8 o'clock we went in and first mother taught us Matthew's gospel. At 9.30 that finished and Mrs. Bergman left and the teacher called Heniipi taught us the Acts of the Apostles, Paul's story, that work (we did). And at 10.30 we came out and got warm in the sun. And then we went in again and had Church history or arithmetic or learned about how to teach Sunday School. And at 12 o'clock school finished and we came out. We came out and ate and sat around and at 1.30 we went for firewood or sometimes we worked on the road or sometimes we planted green vegetables in the garden. That is what we were doing, for nearly four months that is what we were doing.'
BU 2: Descriptive Paragraph

Step 1: Series Sentence

reiparo heta mete vakasika sohota mete pisiholo
we.all were.and and canoe.at go.cont. and and fish

ez ngomohana mete reiparo vata kohati
shot died.cont.they.chs and we.all get.and inside

zi loporiba vivai sohota heg.
tree inside.at putting go.cont. and were.we

Step 2: Series Sentence

mete sohota heta sata beNonorana urovai
and go.cont. and were.and and go. and taro road.only hitting

sohota heta mete muaeta emata emakasa
go.cont. and were.and and again come. and come.will.for

mete maota emata reima vakasi zimeka nganeta vizata
and again come. and our canoe tree.at tie put. and

sogina hebaeka emata maota va vilata
wont.cont. we.chs were.they.where come. and again untie. and

vata mete emogi reima lirra reima rezera
get. and and came.cont. we our wood. and our hay. and

ginevi vata poeka visita mete emogi
.green.vegetable get. and there put. and and came.cont. we

Step 3: Simple Sentence

mete emohota muaota Morobe emata zeltak sua
and come.cont. and again Morobe come. and place. at land

tata mete teza ngodata mete poeka heg.
do. and and got.down. and and there. were. we

BU 3: Series Sentence

mete poto tata mete heinopoho mete engasi rouoho.
and this do. and and were. I ss and leg pierced.I

BU 4: Simple Sentence

engasi rovata mete ne sata Morobe aus sikitaka mete
leg pierce. and and T go. and Morobe aid.post.at and
heta mete marasinivo vohota heho pohavo. was.and and medicine got.cont.and was.I always

BU 5: Series Sentence
heta tohona eng posi tina ravahana mete was.and did.I.chs log that good became.it.chs and
polis boi napuhu mete nemaza hahana mete sata mete rei one.policeman and my.for spoke.he.chs and go.and and we
kahati rei Raea sata mete mete opesinakeha kiapenanga koto inside we Raea go.and and and office.at kisp.with court
hagia.
spoke.we

BU 6: Series Sentence
rei koto hagipuhu mete kavev ravata mete verevata we court spoke.we.ss and dislike become.and and arrive.and
emegi zeitakaza.
came.we place.at.for

Terminus: Simple Sentence
emata mete heta mete vono ravata emegi.
come.and and and were.and and none become.and came.we

'A long time ago Havia and Raea and I left here. We left to go to Morobe and went and arrived at Morobe and stayed with Mairari and Paranisi. While we were there we were going in the canoe and catching fish and putting them inside a tree and going on further. Going on we dug taro gardens and later when we were ready to come back we came back to where the canoe was tied and got the firewood and hay and green vegetables that we had left there and untied the canoe and came. Coming we were coming to Morobe and to the village and landing living there. We were doing that and I hurt my leg. I hurt my leg so I went to the aid post and stayed there for a long time getting medicine. I stayed and eventually my leg got better and then one of the policemen spoke about (marrying) me so we went, Raea and I went into the office and had a court session with the patrol officer. We had the court session and then we got sick of (that place) came home to our village. We went down there (to Morobe) and stayed and when (the time) was finished we came (home).'}
6. **BU 1: Series Sentence**

*begina gitapu ogarehananga velevata pozahahama were.wo.chs sun down.there.from appear.and climbed.it.chs*

*etegi tina gitapura velevanahata velevahana. Looked.we good what.sun.is.appearing appeared.it.chs*

**BU 2: Series Sentence**

*eteta begina pozahahota pozahahapaho look.and were.we.chs climb.cont.and climbed.cont.it.sa*

*pimau tai taha. it.itself what did.it*

**BU 3: Series Sentence**

*tahana mgonisi haretas gitapu akaeka metaha. did.it.chs monn came.across.and sun cover it.did.it*

**BU 4: Series Sentence with a Coordinate Paragraph**

*tahana did.it.chs*

Coordinate 1: Clause

*gitapu pozahata lokaha. sun climb.end entered.it*

Coordinate 2: Series Sentence

*teri iritisa ouraha behana eteta begina part below open was.it.chs look.and were.we.chs*

*helobota mapo kuturu mangahana zeira hamata climb.cont.and all darkness it.gave.it.chs ground*

*maota maoko ale tehaeka Manta kuturu again newly.where.it.had.got.light again darkness*

*munhwa. it.gave.it*

**BU 5: Series Sentence**

*tahana eteta begina maota helobota agare did.it.chs look.and were.we.chs again climb.cont.and up.there*
teri detizamara verevahana eteri.
part above appeared.it.chs looked.we

7: Series Sentence

eterina gitapu sobota maota onge ravahapuho
looked.we.chs sun go.cont.and again straight became.it.ss
hesana ake eteamegi gitapuha.
bc.chs up.there look.cont.we sun.to

'While we waited the sun appeared down there and climbed, it appeared where it usually does and we watched it. While we were watching it climbed and climbed and then what did it do? Whatever it did, the moon came across and covered the sun. This happened and the sun climbed and went behind (the moon). A small part showed below still but while we watched it disappeared and everything was dark, the ground where the dawn had not long come was dark again. This happened and we watched and it still climbed and then above (the moon) a small section of the sun appeared, and we watched it. We watched and the sun kept climbing and became normal again and it is up there and we are watching it.'

7. Setting: Clause

zeirevai ale tehana
tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: Series Sentence

rei paro epeine vetegipuho emwhota gabur era emata
we.all this.side left.we.ss come.cont.and gabur come.down.and
Guburuwanhanga paru epata emahana rei Musaniara
Gubur.from they this came.they.chs we Musanias.and
Kopiara Sarapowa Isaiara Rarvariara rei paro
Kopia.and Sararapu.and Isaila Rarvaria.and we.all
Hamvaiwazi sata kahati Hahav zeiha segipuhu
Hamvaiwazi go.and inside Hahav place.at went.we.ss

Terminus: Clause

Hammania abupumanga rei paro orata hegi.
Hammania.and.Husband.with we.all sleep.and were.we
7.2.1.2 Behavioural Paragraph

Behavioural Paragraph manifests Behavioural Discourse tagmemes and is a great deal more complex than other paragraph types. It has eight tagmemes all of which are optional, but at least two must occur to constitute a paragraph. Most of these tagmemes are permitted to occur more than once and tagmeme order is not fixed.

The tagmemes which occur are Setting, Exhortation, Present Condition, Reason, Warning-result, Evaluation, Teaching and Terminus and these are linked together by juxtaposition, or by an optional conjunction. Tagmeme change is indicated by aspect, mode and mood occurrences and restrictions and the changes in these items is a cohesive factor in the paragraph. Other paragraph types tend to be consistent in the use of aspect and mode but Behavioural Paragraph switches according to pattern constantly.

Whilst many sentences and paragraphs manifest the tagmemes of Behavioural Paragraph, Relational Paragraph and Circumstance Result Sentence most commonly occur.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Behavioural Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D Qu S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amp S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord 1 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord 2 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel Pa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting tagmeme is brief, does not repeat, and is expounded by a Simple Sentence or Series Sentence which says, 'I am going to tell you this', 'I have this to say so listen', or similar. This tagmeme can also set the time which is related to a following Exhortation. Occasionally the setting is collapsed into the first Base of the first Sentence of the paragraph.

Exhortation tagmeme can include a reason for or result of the exhortation as part of the sentence or paragraph which expounds it. A Simple Sentence is usually imperative mood but can be imperfect aspect. Imperfect aspect is a polite form for giving a command or request. Longer constructions manifesting this tagmeme are imperfect aspect throughout except for any sentence Final Base which optionally is imperative mood. Future continuous mode is optional with either imperfect aspect or imperative mood. Exhortation has been observed to occur from one to four times in a paragraph, and usually is linked only by juxtaposition to any preceding tagmeme, but optionally povoa 'therefore', enq 'but', mete 'and' or povoa mete 'therefore then' occur as linkage. Only one occurrence of Behavioural Paragraph without an Exhortation has been seen. All the other tagmemes in a Behavioural Paragraph are centered around the Exhortation.

Present Condition tagmeme gives the poor behaviour or general state of things which has provoked the speaker to give the accompanying Exhortation. This tagmeme most commonly occurs preceding or following Exhortation and has been observed twice in one paragraph. Perfect aspect and present continuous mode occur throughout. Linkage is most commonly by conjunction mete 'and' but occasionally it is juxtaposed to the preceding tagmeme. Present Condition occurred in one example after the Terminus and it was then followed by a second Terminus.

Warning-result tagmeme is a means of promising good results for obedience to the Exhortation and or a warning of what will happen if the Exhortation is not heeded. Aspect is always imperfect and future continuous mode is permitted to occur. This tagmeme is usually juxtaposed to the preceding tagmeme but ma 'or' and enq 'but' optionally occur. Two occurrences of warning-result in the same paragraph have been observed, but one is more usual.

Evaluation does not occur frequently and is a comment or opinion of the speaker about what he is saying. Those observed have been linked by juxtaposition to the preceding tagmeme.

Teaching tagmeme is a statement about something that the hearers may not know and which may help them to understand why they should obey the exhortation. This tagmeme has not been observed to occur more than once.

Terminus says 'About those things I have spoken' or similar. It has been observed to occur more than once only when a Present Condition occurred after the first Terminus.
Examples: Behavioural Paragraph

1. Setting: Clause
   
i abupu vekepuho
   you husband get.you.will.ss
   
Exhortation: Coordinate 2 Sentence
   
i gogotaza kaeve ravotu gogotaza kaeve
   you work.for dislike don't.become work.for dislike
   
ravotu.
   don't.become
   
Link: ong
   but
   
Warning-result: Relational Paragraph
   
Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence
   
i tinama gogota toke ni abupu vata
   you well.only work do.cont.will.you you husband get.and
   
tinama heke.
   well.only be.will.you
   
Link: mete
   and
   
Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence
   
i gogota kaeve ravakepuho vetera
   you work dislike become.will.you.ss discardingly
   
toke povota ni abupu vekepa
   do.cont.will.you therefore you husband get.will.you.chs
   
mote abupu nimaza kaeve ravahopane.
   and husband your.for dislike become.cont.will.he
   
'When you get a husband don't be lazy, don't be lazy. But if you continue working well, then when you get a husband life will be good. But if you dislike work, if you are careless then when you are married your husband will be getting sick of you.'
2. Exhortation: Simple Sentence

hatetei.
listen.im.pl

Warning-result: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

hatetekepaho lopori vorourspanena gogota
listen.will.you.ss inside turn.will.it.chs work

teko povozia tina Ongapu nengizapanena
do.will.you therefore good God you.help.will.he.chs

gogota tekeza ou ravapano.
work do.will.you.chs open become.will.it

Link: mete and

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

Ongapu kaeevonanga ni nima hekeza veteza
God.for dislike with you be.for discarding

nimovong a va valahata tokevavora
your.thing.only get get.up.and what.you.will.be.doing.for

ginavo rarijamot ve rizah verevevai sohipane
hunger we.all.to all.the.time appearing go.cont.will.it

Link: povova mete therefore then

Present Condition: Clause

ne Ongapu gogovoza zeitati beta
I God's work.for place.to be.and

Terminus: Clause

povora oke vare angho.
about.that there openly you.3ld.1

'Listea. And if you listen and change your behaviour and work then God will help you well and you will work and (the good time) will appear. But if you, with dislike and carelessness toward God, obey only your own desires, we will always be hungry.'
3. Exhortation: Series Sentence

Exposition: Series Sentence

Exposition: Identical Predicate Paragraph

Idea 1: Simple Sentence

Idea 2: Simple Sentence

Text: Simple Sentence

Link: povoza therefore

Exhortation: Coordinate Paragraph

Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence
Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

mouta lakivo hotune. again lucky don't.do

Present Condition: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

angarabanapu kezavo yonopu abanapwoho kezavonangapu
person.one strong none one man.em strong.with.one

povozav nete angarabanapu enata niha oma toutahana
therefore then person.one come.and you.at come sit.ho.chs

navozav vono ma neha kaeva nehona ak
something.for none or 1.at disilfe.for put.t.chs up.there

ariparoha emaha vono.
you.all.at came.it none

Link: ong but

Statement: Simple Sentence

nima naemavoza ma nima hez hez nimovoha homongai
your.no.come.for or your be be your.at heavy

tanahavoza ma asi rep tamengivoza e mata
do.cont.it.for or disobedient do.cont.it.for come.and

oke minanga hez.
there you.with be

Link: povozav therefore

Exhortation: Simple Sentence

moats peteve lakivo totun.
again now Lucky don't.do

Exhortation: Series Sentence

lakivo gizoh vatepleupuh jokata pinanga mangevo
lucky discontinue.allss you.ss enter.and her.with prayer

hazei ma pinanga ngetivo hazei ma pinanga Ongapuza
speak.pl or her.with talk speak.pl or her.with God.abcut
hazei.
speak.pl

Link: ma
or

Warning-result: Series Sentence
Omgapusa gogota pinanga ariparo naenapu uli tata
God's work her.with you.all each.other tie do.and
tepikuva tinavo verevapa,
do.will.you.chs good.time appear.will.it

Link: ong
but

Exhortation: Alternative Sentence
pi ama vetetune ma pi rei manotune.
she only don't.leave or she place her.give.don't

Terminus: Simple Sentence
povosa ngetivo oke nangoho.
about.that talk 'there you.told.I

Present Condition: Simple Sentence
mete lakivokarama nena povo orah rezhah ariparoma
and lucky.at only only that.thing all.the.time your.all
enamegieka ariparoma samagieka ari Moimo
where.you.are.coming your.all where.you.are.going you name
abanariza samagieka enamegieka ariparo
men's where.you.are.going where.you.are.coming you.all
orah rezhah lakivonanga tovai samegi.
all.the.time lucky.with doing go.cont.you

Terminus: Simple Sentence
povosa oke nangoho.
about.that there you.tell.I

'I will tell you this thing and you listen. Why are you bringing gambling inside your village and are participating in it and don't listen to the talk or sit with her and speak or work with her? But you are controlled by gambling. All the time you
are gambling. And about that, what thing are you working towards? Therefore listen. Don't gamble any more. There are weak people and strong people and if a person comes and visits you there is no problem and I am not disliking you. But in that you are not participating and your way of living is heavy and you are disobedient (my dislike) is coming to you. Therefore don't gamble any more. Discontinue gambling and go in and pray with her and talk to her and speak about God with her. And if you link up with her in doing God's work the good time will come. But don't leave her and don't ignore her. About that I have given you this talk. But you are only gambling, when you come and when you go, everywhere and all the time you are just gambling. So about that I have told you.'

4. Setting: Simple Sentence

mēte pūra hāona.
and this thing speak will I

Present Condition: Descriptive Paragraph

Step 1: Coordinate 2 Sentence

garosi rari Ongampura ununu hamanata heta sēra hāoava first we God for forget and be and cross speaking

samegi ngai hāoava samegi go cont we anger speaking go cont we

Step 2: Antithetical Sentence

tovai sōhota heta mēte tokati povorz home doing go cont and be and later about that think

name ong zuana Ongampura māngamēgi no put but quickly God to prayer him tell cont we

nāi anapagesa something us give will for

Step 3: Coordinate 1 Sentence

nāi anapagesa Ongampura zuana māngamēgi something us give will for God to quickly prayer

māngamēgi mēte garosi rari na sēra hāoava segi him tell cont we and first our cross speaking went we

pongita rari hodade nāta na home those things about we know no do or think
namekana zuama nangamegi povozia where.no.put.only quickly him.tell.cont.we therefore

Link: mete and

Teaching: Antithetical Sentence

giza moda naropo yomo giza houloropokaro yomo ang rarim other.lips none two.lips none but our

gizaropo nenaropo Ongapuna vinga mangoka Ongaputa

abatavo haokaza ma pima ngetivo haokaza name speak.cont.well.for or his talk speak.cont.will.for

abatavo haokaza name speak.cont.well.for or his talk speak.cont.will.for

Present Condition: Series Sentence

giza tapuroponangama gogo modavo hamaraha gugovo ma hamaraha same.lips.with.only work.other ground.on work or ground.on

het hera hevai angarabo modaringa sora haovai state.of being speaking people others.for cross speaking

naenari menovala iuvorala havara ravovai tohota heta each.other hitting enemies becoming do.cont.and be.and

maatama nima heringinangama havoe tata emera pat, again.only your.body.with turn do.and come.and reply

"Ogapu ne nima asita tamohopu eve." God I your.service one.who.does here

Evaluation: Simple Sentence

rekota naengizotu.

enough no.help.imp

Warning-result: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Direct Quotation Sentence

povoza pi pota angapana, "Ni vatamo pota about.that be this you.tell.will.he you before this
tengi mete nima hori povoza ni home name, ong ni did you and your body that for you think no put but you

naota emata nena at nangengi povoza garosi again come and me to question me told you therefore first

nima hori povo vete" your bad that throw

Link: mete

and

Statement: Simple Sentence

povo tai tata vetekesa oke nangapane that what do and throw will for there you tell will he

Exhortation: Simple Sentence

povo garosi sakep teke nima hori voza that first sorry do will you your bad for

Warning-result: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Series Sentence

tata vetekepahobo mete Ongapuha sekena do and throw will you ss enf and God at for go will you chs

nego tapan na nanapanaza angahana heza you help will he or you give will for us told he chs be

Link: povoza therefore

Statement: Coordinate Paragraph

Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

bez hez rarimo vo tinama koravo ravata our state sf being well only care become and

hepike be will you

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

naemari nevo ela lov oono each other talk cutting none
Coordinate 3: Coordinate 2 Sentence

naenari ngavo va valakazavo oke Jesu Kristoza each.other talk obeying there Jesus Christ's

ngavo oke va valashpane, talk there obey.will.they

Link: povoza wete therefore then

Exhortation: Simple Sentence

naenerina hez hazavo tina koravo ravata hek. each.other's state.of.being well care become and be.will.we

'I will tell you this. To begin with we forget God and speak
crossly and angrily. We go doing that and later we don't think
about that but quickly we pray to God for something. We quickly
pray to God for something but about our cross speaking we don't
remember, therefore we pray quickly. But we have no other lips
and with the only lips we have we ought to be praising God,
speaking his name, telling his story, with the lips that he has
given us. But with the same lips other work, ground work, the
way of life on the ground, about these things we speak, we speak
crossly to each other, we fight and become enemies and then you
turn again and come and say, "God, I am your servant." He won't
help you. About that he will tell you, "Before you did this,
but you don't think about that bad thing. But you come again
and ask me. Therefore first go and throw away your bad ways." And he will tell you how to throw away your bad ways. So first
repent of your bad ways. If you repent and come to God he will
help you and he has said he will give to you. So we will take
good care of our way of living. There will be no sharp talking.
They who obey each other will be obeying the talk of Jesus Christ.
Therefore then let us take good care of each other's way of life.'

7.2.1.3 Descriptive Paragraph

The Descriptive Paragraph is usually long and manifests Descriptive Discourse tagmemes. It has also been observed manifesting a Build-up in Narrative Discourse. Linkage is by Tail-head recapitulation, between Steps and by conjunction between Result and Reason.

There are three tagmemes which occur in Descriptive Paragraphs. Setting and Terminus are optional but nuclear in that they are
expounded in their own unique way in Descriptive Paragraphs. Step is obligatory and also nuclear, and has been observed to occur from one
to five times. Commonly three or four occur. Step is frequently manifestated by a Series Sentence, the first Base of which has the
recapitulation which links that sentence to the preceding one in the
paragraph. Series Sentences in Descriptive Paragraphs do not tend to be as long as Series Sentences in Narrative Paragraphs. Recapitulation never occurs at the beginning of a Descriptive Paragraph.

Mode markers occur consistently throughout Descriptive Paragraph.

Occasionally the conjunction mete 'and' precedes the recapitulation link between two sentences and is considered to be a type of discourse level focus marker.

Descriptive Paragraph

Setting #Topic #Step\(^{n=1-5}\) #Result #Reason #Terminus

SS Purpose SS Narr Pa Narr Pa Series S

Coordinate Pa tagmeme Series S

Reason S
Coordinate 1 S
Coordinate 2 S
Antithetical S
Relational Pa
Identical Predicate Pa
Coordinate Pa

Setting tagmeme is usually a Simple Sentence but sometimes the first Base of the first sentence of the paragraph functions as Setting. This tagmeme does not usually set the time for the paragraph because time is not in focus in a Descriptive Paragraph. This tagmeme usually says 'This is what we do/ were doing'. 'This is what we say', 'This work is hard'. Occasionally a time setting is given in the Setting.

Topic tagmeme optionally follows the Setting and is a clause or sentence with a predicate which is imperfect aspect and which has the suffix -za 'for, about' on it. This tagmeme relates to and gives the topic for the whole paragraph. An example of Topic tagmeme is given here because the paragraphs in which it has been observed are too long to include in the example sections.

Setting: Simple Sentence

mete pota tamegi,
and this do.cont.we
Step 1: Direct Quotation Sentence

pota homeana na "ne pete ve rumunye loza nga aroma". 
this think and he I today cassowary for hunt take off will I
'This is what we do. When a man wants to go to the bush, he thinks, 'Today I will hunt cassowary'."

Result and Reason tagmemes have been observed only in a paragraph describing a procedure. It seems likely, however, that they could occur with any Descriptive Paragraph. These tagmemes give the result of doing the Step correctly and the reason why the Step is done. See example 4.

Terminus, if it is a clause, is linked grammatically by the anticipatory subject marker to the sentence Base which precedes it. This tagmemes refers to what has been said or to what is to be said in the following paragraph. See example 2 for an example of the latter.

Descriptive Paragraph and Narrative Paragraph are similar but are separate paragraph types on the bases of the following:

a) Setting and Terminus tagmemes expounded differently
b) Occurrence of Topic tagmemes in Descriptive Paragraph versus non-occurrence in Narrative Paragraph
c) Essential person orientation in Narrative Paragraph versus a thematic orientation in Descriptive Paragraph
d) Occurrence of mode throughout Descriptive Paragraph whereas mode is not generally a feature of Narrative Paragraphs
e) Narrative is potentially more expandable than is Descriptive.

Examples: Descriptive Paragraph

1. Setting: First Base of Circumstance Result Sentence

mote mageiraha povoziko 
and new time therefore

Step 1: Reason Sentence

ne kuta toma 
I ignorant will do I
hezavota ne gogota kuta toma 
I work ignorant will do I
heza ma ne volo pu manavosa kuta toma hezavosa
be or I pig for.giving ignorant will.do.1 be

tata mete ne upaia ma hema heza volo pu wena hema ma
do and and I nothing be.I will be pig none will.be.1 or

ne avase vona pu zora go nangapedu hema heza ma
I garden nothing one yans no.plant one will.be.1 be or

ne avase nangapedu heta gina ngwomana hezavosa
I garden no.plant one be and hungry die will be

povozha pi katero nangoha Ravei pi latevo
therefore he advice me.told.cont he name he advice

nangoha,
me.fold.cont he

Step 2: Relations' Paragraph

Statement: Series Sentence

tohana mete ne gogota tinana tovai soho.
did.cont he.chs and I work well only doing went.1

Link: mete
and

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

ne gana ma toho povozha pi pat "epen
I bad only did cont.1 therefore he reply this thing

hor ama oke tengi povozha tinana ta'
bad only there did you therefore well only do

Step 3: Series Sentence

pota na ahamana ne tinana tovai soho.
this said cont he.chs I well only doing went.cont.1

Step 4: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

tinama tovai soho povozahoho mete ne hodade
well only doing went cont.1 therefore then I knowledge

ravo ho,
became cont.1
Link: mete

and

Statement: Simple Sentence

Kokoira Kiririgao vitaite mete ne mape hodade
name and name mete and and I all knowledge

rahoheke ek.

that I became there.

Step 5: Series Sentence

hodade ravata mete ne nemauho nema augsi ngeketa
knowledge became and and I myself my garden plant and

adakapi velata vata emata varengata tesata
sweet potato did and get and came and cook and put out and

mata ma va sata voloholo adakapi heingadake
eat and or get go and pigs sweet potato hot stones

veteta veirata tesata manata tohoana
throw and cover and take out and then give and did cont I chs

mete ravet eteta pat, "mete ni gogovo oke hodade
and name look and reply and you work there knowledge

and name look and reply and you work there knowledge

ravengi povota mete nina hodade ravengi povota
became you therefore then your knowledge became you for that

hodader opponents tohetha"
knowledge with do cont in

Terminas: Series Sentence

Ahabana mete ne pote tovai soho tamaho
Said he chs and I that went cont I do cont I

'And because I was new because I would be ignorant because I would be lazy without pigs or without a garden because I would not plant yams or would not plant my garden and be hungry therefore he advised me. Ravel advised me. He did that and I was doing my work well. But if I did badly then he said. "This you did badly therefore do well." He said that and I was working well. I was working well therefore then I gained understanding. And I gave birth to kokof and Kiririgao and my knowledge was complete there. I gained knowledge and I myself planted my garden and dug the sweet potato and brought and cooked it and served it out and ate or took it and cooked on hot stones the sweet potato for the
pigs, and took it out and gave it to them and Ralph watched and said, "You understand your work well so with the knowledge you have gained keep doing." He said that and that is what I am doing.

2. Setting: Simple Sentence

\[
\text{mete zi keohaveza gogota above, and plank's work big.}
\]

Step 1: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Coordinate 2 Sentence

\[
\text{mete puloriha reiparo samegi zimede oramegi and bush in we all go cont we tree hit cont we zy} \]

\[
\text{tamegi ngaramegi veramegi Mote measure do cont we cut cont we split cont we and vitohota heza. Shape cont and be.}
\]

Link: mete

and

Statement: Simple Sentence

\[
\text{git napu reiparo zihaveza gogovo tata vitamegi sun one we all plank's work do and shape cont we}
\]

Step 2: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Series Sentence

\[
\text{vitohota hezana vitohota hezana vitohota hezana mete shape and be chs shape and be chs shape and be chs and zel ravanahana yeteta viamegipuh place become cont it chs discard and put cont we ss emanegi come cont we}
\]

Link: mete

and

Statement: Simple Sentence

\[
\text{emata oramegi, come and sleep cont we}
\]
Link: \texttt{mote}
and

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

\texttt{mote zoreva! mouta sata cwaeti pwoza mote zoreva!}
and tomorrow again go and be therefore then tomorrow

\texttt{mouta sata relisa vitamegi.}
again go and we all shape cont we

Step 3: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Series Sentence

\texttt{ritata va vono vatamegipuh \_ mote vitata enamegi.}
shape and make nothing cont we ss and put and come cont we

\texttt{link: mote}
and

Statement: Series Sentence

\texttt{zeitata ngari angaholoma mangata lainiyo tata}
place at young women to them told and line do and

\texttt{mote rihawza snamegina samaha.}
and planks for send cont we chs go cont they

Step 4: Series Sentence

\texttt{paru sanahapaho mote paru at byatsi paruma gagangika}
they go cont they ss and they bundle and their head on

\texttt{kopeta emanaha.}
bring and come cont they

Step 5: Simple Sentence

\texttt{vuta emata viansha.}
gift and come and put cont they

'Making planks is hard work. We go to the bush, cut down a tree, measure it, cut it into lengths, split it and shape it. For one day we all are doing plank work and making planks. We shape them and keep at it and when it gets late we leave it and come home. We come and sleep. The next day we go again and if there are any left we work at shaping them again. We shape and finish and leave them and come. And at the village we line up the young women and instruct them and send them, and they go. They go and
they bundle them up and carry them in or their heads. They bring them and put them.'

3. Setting: Simple Sentence

mete itoulovoza pota tamegi ro ei.
and smoke.for this do.cont.we we

Step 1: Series Sentence

itoulovo mangarokana mete kohati zeimakehana pi
smoke light.cont.we.will.chs and inside house.in it
sata ena sata ena tohopanaena
ahararangarabo go and come go and come do.cont.it.will.chs people
	outata hepazari ingi hahotumavoz mete sati
sit and be will.ones try speak.cont.least and go and

gud vizoia tiamegipuhu mete vata enama ul
pull.cont.we.ss and get.and come and tile
kumai pull.cont.we.ss and get.and come and tile

tamegipuh mete itingade mangaramegina ngadata itoulovo
do.cont.we.ss and fire light.cont.we.chs burn and smoke

garosizavoama verevamahana mete gud vizoitananga urata
first one only appear cont.it.chs and kumai with hit and
va tok vatamegi itoulovo
make go up cont we smoke

Step 2: Series Sentence

urata va tok vatamegina mete itoulovo tok helama ha
hit and make go up cont we chs and smoke up climb cont it

Step 3: Coordinate 1 Sentence

tok helama ha mete gud viz pota vetar navete
up climb cont it chs and kumai that discarding no throw
ong mete reva araposik meamegi
but and above roof in put cont we

Step 4: Series Sentence

araposik meamegina heza.
roof in put cont we chs be
Result: Narrative Paragraph

Setting: Clause

mete itingade mangaramegina
and fire light.cont.we.chs

Build-up 1: Series Sentence

mete itingade tinana revaha itoulovo helamaha
and fire will.only above smoke climb.cont.it
tokoveti.
ridge.to

Build-up 2: Series Sentence

tamahana mete zeirurumere abanaranagarabo heta pota
do.cont.it.chs and goods.and people be that
tina heta.
good be

Reason: Narrative Paragraph

Build-up 1: Circumstance Result Sentence

mete pota natotu puvaza mete itingade
and this will.not.do therefore then fire
mangaramegina mete itoulovo kohati zei giruvokana
light.cont.we.chs then smoke inside place room.at.only
sata ema tamahana mete abanaranagarabo ingi
go.and come do.cont.it.chs and people cry
hamaha itoulovo etangik lokamaha ma
speak.cont.they smoke eye.in enter.cont.it or
agolasika lokamah.
mouth.in enter.cont.it

Build-up 2: Series Sentence

ravata helangika lokamahanha abanaranagarabo
become.and nostril.in enter.cont.it.chs people
zei giruvoka paru ingi hamaha.
place room.at they cry speak.cont.they
'And about the smoke this is what we do. When we (first) light the fire, because the smoke will fill the house and the people who will be sitting there will cry, we go and pull out some kunai and bring it and make a bundle and when we light the fire and it burns, and the first smoke comes, then with the kunai bundle we chase it and make the smoke go up. We chase it and make it go up and the smoke climbs. The smoke climbs but we don't just discard that kunai but we poke it into the roof. We poke it into the roof and it stays there. So when we are lighting the fire the smoke goes up to the house ridge. It does and where the goods and the people are is comfortable. But if we don't do this, then when we light the fire, the smoke fills the room and the people cry and the smoke goes into their eyes and into their mouths. It goes into their nostrils and the people in the room are crying.'

4. Setting: Coordinate Paragraph

Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

vatam  pota haaha  aerarina.
before this said.cont.thev white.ones/about

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

paru  abana  manoga  emata  aerarinanga  pogovo  tata
they  men  first  come.and  white.ones.with  work  do.and

honeyu  honeyu  emata  pogovo  toha  poraha.
one  one  come.and  work  did.cont.thev  at that.time

Step 1: Simple Sentence

meto  paru  zeiruruma  eteha.
and  they  goods.at  looked.cont.thev

Step 2: Series Sentence

zeiruruma  etehana  aerari  vata  emata
goods.at  looked.cont.thev.chs  white.ones  get.and  come.and

vizata  tohana  we  havevoka  sipingih  vata  ema
put.and  did.cont.thev.chs  or  sea.at  ship  get.and  come

zeiruruma  va  porahato  rouhamaha
goods  get  climb.and  stood.cont.thev.chs

toehapuh  meto  paru  pota  haaha
took.out.cont.thev.ss  and  they  this  said.cont.thev  ok

"kara
Before they said this about the white people. When the first ones came one by one they were working with the white people. They looked at all their goods. They looked at the goods and the white people brought and put them, and the ships brought them on the sea and waited while they were unloaded and they said this. "Really, our departed ones make these things and send them to us and they are coming perhaps. They do this but the white people are greedy." That is what they said. "Each one's dead one thinks of the village people, he thinks of his older sister, or his younger sister, or his daughter, or his son, or he thinks of his brothers and writes the papers and sticks them on (the goods) and they come, but the white people take them when they come. Those who are caretakers tear the labels off and throw them away and keep the things for themselves." That is what they are saying and I heard it."
7.2.2 Non-complex Paragraphs

None of these have been observed with a Setting or a Terminus.
The tagmemes are more often expounded with Sentences than with other paragraphs.

7.2.2.1 Relational Paragraph

Relational Paragraph does not tend to be very long and because it so frequently embeds in other paragraphs, it occurs in all discourse types.

Linkage is by conjunction and although events expressed in a Relational Paragraph can be chronological, it is not the chronology or lack of chronology that is in focus but rather the relationships indicated by the conjunctions which is in focus. Any combination of conjunctions occur in this type of paragraph, depending on what the speaker wishes to express. The same conjunction can also occur a number of times.

The conjunctions are ong 'but', ma 'or', mete 'and' 'then' and povor 'therefore'. The combinations ong mete 'but then', povor mete 'therefore then' and ong povor 'but therefore' also occur. These are the same conjunctions as those which link clauses into sentences and it is the information contours which separate sentences from paragraphs, as well as the fact that paragraphs are potentially longer.

Deep structure encoded in two or more Statements is contrast, coupling, efficient cause, result, alternation and less commonly, succession. Succession is only encoded by the conjunction mete 'and'. A combination of these can be encoded in the same paragraph.

Relational Paragraph

\[ (+Statement) \land (+Link) \land (+Statement)_{n=1-7} \]

SS

conjunction

SS

Alternative S

Series S

Coordinate 1 S

Exposition Pa

Antithetical S

Coordinate 2 Sentence

Exposition Paragraph

Series Sentence

Coordinate Sentence

Circumstance Result S

Antithetical Sentence

Alternative Sentence

Contrafactual Sentence
Setting and Term inus tagmeme have not been observed with a Relational Paragraph possibly because this paragraph type so commonly embeds in other paragraph types.

Link plus Statement have been observed to repeat from one to seven times.

Examples: Relational Paragraph

1. Statement: Simple Sentence

ne tihana emoho
I well only came I

Link: omg
But

Statement: Simple Sentence

paru garosi enaha nemu ndari lutu taha.
the my others who came first ignorant did they

'I came well. But the others who came first didn't know what to do.'

2. Statement: Coordinate Paragraph

Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

nema monovoka rye.
my road at here

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

nima ayare ravavaka samengivoza zwaits nema
your up there ridge on what you are going likeness my
monovoka.
road at

Link: powza meta
therefore then

Statement: Series Sentence

oke samakanga ne dede.
there go cont it chr I understand

Link: powza
therefore
Statement: Simple Sentence

ne eve nema vegingiama variamoho.
I have my betel nut. just chewed.

'This is my road. In the same way as you travel up there in the mountains this is my road. Therefore when it goes (the sea is rough) I understand. Therefore I am just chewing my betel nut.'

3. Statement: Simple Sentence

mete hoval ngaripunanga reipi varus vata mete
and Gahu-Sanane girl went we two plane got and and

emata reipi Garaina ngodegi.
come and we two Garaina landed we

Link: mete and

Statement: Simple Sentence

peraha ne laa kozavo tata emo ho.
at that time I sick strong do and came I

Link: mete and

Statement: Coordinate 1 Sentence

kogare Garaina ne laz reitak nasa mete ne
down there Garaina I aid post neg go and I

Ilenir Doris heza hata emo ho.
Elaine and Doris be think came I

Link: mete and

Statement: Series Sentence

parupi nema lamavu mengizahana tina rvavo ho.
they two my sickness me help they chs well became I

'And the Gahu-Sanane girl and I got the plane and came and landed at Garaina. And at that time I was very sick. But I did not go to the Garaina aid post, I remembered that Elaine and Doris were there. And when they treated me I got better.'
4. Statement: Simple Sentence

mene darima hezavoh e darima hezavotina hezawo wyofe. life our wyofe life good be none

Link: ong
but

Statement: Circumstance Result Sentence

Jesu Kristo darima Amjukho orah resal wogizata tinavo
Jesus Christ our Lord always us help and good thing
anovai emanasha povota aliza tinasanahena
us giving come cont he therefore day good us give he
petehe
now

Link: mene
and

Statement: Series Sentence

pima ngetivo naenapu mangakazvotwa gakosipil
His talk each other for telling first he

engizapsepuho rari va toh toh avatapane darima haitokoro
us help will ss we will make light he or our door
tepazvotwa gamanata mungamagaka
for opening bow him give and beseech him tell will we

'Our way of living is not good. But Jesus Christ our Lord is always helping us and giving us good thing, so we have a nice day today. And so that he will help us and make it easy for us, and so that he will show us the way and help us to share his good news with each other, we will bow our heads and pray.'

5. Statement: Series Sentence

mene abonykaro napu nima main napu nimopura hatangika
and crowd each one alone one your one's bones at

na napu nimopura raveroka na napu nimopu ngapana
or one your one's head at or one your dies chs

hatai veta eni viohama heheaka pta tovali soha.
bone where they brought and put then that doing went cont they
Link: **ma**

or

Statement: **Simple Sentence**

**haovai soha.**
saying went.cont.they

Link: **ma**

or

Statement: **Simple Sentence**

**tovai soha.**
doing went.cont.they

'And if you, being one of the crowd had relative's bones, or one of your relatives was a leader, or if one of your relatives dies and they brought his bones, that is what they were doing or that is what they were saying.'

6. Statement: **Alternative Sentence**

**pota haoha ma haohana ne hateteoha.**
this said.he or said.he.chs I heard.

Link: **mete**

and

Statement: **Coordinate 1 Sentence**

**mete "ngeti povo rotapuvo vatah" pota haoha mete**
and talk that true perhaps that said.cont.they and

**nari amm hamaha taput pota oke.**
some also say.cont.they same that there

Link: **ma**

or

Statement: **Simple Sentence**

**homezaha.**
think.cont.they

Link: **eng mete**

but then
Statement: Coordinate 2 Sentence

pete ve ho ho kapota epa ta hodado ravega voruvi pu pima
how en source this know became we white man he his

pite

vatana tata bodade ravahaga.
his thing before do and know became his emph

Link: povoza mete
therefore then

Statement: Series Sentence

pi pimauho pi pimotu matut tamahapuho pi pimotu
he himself sub his things make do cont he ss he his things

vata samaha
get and come cont he

Link: mete
and

Statement: Alternative Sentence

modari vaganeza pete ve moningi verevahana moninginanga
others for getting now money cane it class money with

mete runa tata rari duri vamegi ma
and buy do and we dark ones get cont we or

ser modari
other white people get cont they

Link: ong mete
but then

Statement: Simple Sentence

povoza go gota tamahariho ng na iira mai potu
about that work the ones who do sub all these things

matut tamaha
make do cont they

Link: mete
and
Statement: Coordinate 2 Sentence

aerariho emata zeitakaroti toutovai emanaha
white.ones.sub come.and to.all.plates sitting come.cont.they

rarima hamaretaroti emata toutovai emanaha rari
our ground.to come.and sitting come.cont.they we

Papua Niu Giniza hamaraha emata toutamaha.
Papua New Guinea's ground.at come.and sit.cont.they

'This is what they were saying, they were saying it and I heard. 'That talk is true perhaps', that is what they were saying. And some are still saying it, the same thing. Or they are thinking it. But now we understand the real source, the white man from before worked and gained understanding about his things. Therefore he himself is making his own things and is bringing his own things. And so others can buy them money has come and we dark people are getting them, or other white people are getting them. And about that, those who are working are making all these things. And the white people have come to all the places, to our ground they have come, to Papua New Guinea they have come.'

7.2.2.2 Time Contrast Paragraph

Time Contrast Paragraph is limited to two obligatory tagmemes so is not very long. All the examples seen have been embedded in other paragraphs. Occurrence of this paragraph appears, by looking at present data, to be limited to Descriptive Discourse only.

Time 1 and Time 2 are the two nuclear and obligatory tagmemes and cohesion between them is maintained by the occurrence of a temporal in each, and it is these temporals which indicate the contrast in the paragraph. An optional link which is conjunction can also occur but more usually the tagmemes are simply juxtaposed.

Time Contrast Paragraph

#Time 1 #link #Time 2
SS mete 'and'
Alternative S ong 'but'
Circumstance Res S Coordinate 2 S
Circumstance Result S Alternative S
Relational Pa
Relational Paragraph
Coordinate Paragraph
Temporals which have been observed in the Time tagmemes are haopata 'yesterday', peteve 'today', mampga 'first', and vatame 'before'. There is no set order in which the time is given, that is the earlier time can be manifested in Time 1 or in Time 2, but a contrast of time must occur between the two tagmemes. In example 2 the temporal occurs nominalized so it means 'before ones'.

Link does not usually occur but it has been observed manifested by the conjunctions mete 'and' and ma 'or'. More data would probably show that other conjunctions could also occur as link.

Examples: Time Contrast Paragraph

1. Time 1: Simple Sentence

haopata monira zwiurumata ngetivo reko hagi. yesterday money.and goods.about talk read spoke.we

Time 2: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Simple Sentence

peteve rarina loporizaroha hezata Zems kapota now our inside.at be.what name source
angahana heraka reko hata naenari what.he.told.us.and.still.is read speak.and each.other
mangaka
tell.will.we

Link: povoza
therefore

Statement: Series Sentence

rarima ngetivo etegieka ma hahona hatetegieka our talk that.we.see or what.I.spoke.and.you.heard
hateteta hupikena reko hama.
hear.and be.you.will.chs read speak.will.1

'Yesterday I read about money and goods. Today what James had written about our insides and the source of what we do we will read together. Therefore, the talk that you are looking at or that you heard me announce, while you listen, I will read it.'
2. Time 1: Circumstance Result Sentence

mete peteve rari hodade ravegi povozgra mete rari pat
and now we know become. we therefore then we reply

"varusi" pota hamegi.
plane this say. cont. we

Link: mete
and

Time 2: Circumstance Result Sentence

paru vatamori unumu beha povozgra "sipiranom"
they before. ones ignorant were. they therefore plane

pota hocha.
this said. cont. they

'Today we understand so we say "valus". But the ones before were ignorant so they said '"sipiranom'."

5. Time 1: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Simple Sentence

mete peteve monisi aho rari vumegi.
and today money big we get. cont. we

Link: ma
or

Statement: Simple Sentence

zuma tamegi.
buy do. cont. we

Link: ong
but

Time 2: Alternative Sentence

manoga rei nongi avisiparama manya mete dimie
first we money. little them. give. and and cloth

vogi ma ngetita vogi ma pei ulagi pote
got. cont. we or matches got. cont. we or thing. smell this

haha sopurata pongi vogi.
said. they soap about these. things got. cont. we
'Now we have a lot of money. And we pay (a lot). But before we just gave them a tiny amount of money and got cloth, or matches or smell thing, that is what they called soap. These things we got.'

4. Time 1: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Simple Sentence

Peteve masaholongape rariparo tima ngetivo namegi.
now white.ones_with we.all_well talk speak.cont.we

Link: ma
or

Statement: Simple Sentence

Rariparo tina toutamegi.
we.all_well sit.cont.we

Link: ma
or

Statement: Simple Sentence

Gipizo naenapu manata namegi.
food each.other the.give.and eat.cont.we

Link: ong
but

Time 2: Coordinate Paragraph

Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

Masega rei varezata sogi oke.
first we were.ones.who.ran.away there

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

Pituholo hata paruma abatavo rei pituholo hata
demon say.and their.name we demon say.and

Varezata sogi.
fed.and.went.cont.we

'Now we talk easily with the white men. Or we all sit together well. Or we give each other food and eat. But before we were ones who ran away. We said 'demons', we called their name 'demons', and ran away.'
7.2.2.3 Identical Predicate Paragraph

Identical Predicate Paragraph usually embeds in other paragraphs so it occurs in all discourse types. Linkage is frequently by juxtaposition only and internal cohesion is maintained by the repetition of the same predicate in each Idea. Chronology of events is not in focus at all, rather this paragraph type is a means of adding further information relating to the same event by means of repetition of the predicate.

The actor in each Idea is always the same, and the predicates always refer to the same event, thus aspect and mode are the same throughout the paragraph.

Deep structure is paraphrase of the amplification type.

Numerous examples of this paragraph have not been seen.

Identical Predicate Paragraph

+ Idea 1 *Link + Idea 2 *(Idea 3)n=1-4
SS conjunction SS Same as Idea 2
Series Sentence mete 'and' Series S Direct Quotation S
ma 'or'
Coord 2 S
T C Pa
Coord Pa
Rel Pa

This paragraph type is not usually long, two or three Idea tags were usual, but in one example six occurred (see example 5).

Link tagmeme is not common and does not occur as much in two or three tagmeme paragraphs (only one has been observed) as in longer paragraphs. Only mete 'and' and ma 'or' have been seen manifesting this tagmeme.

Identical Predicate Paragraph is similar to Amplification Sentence but Predicate tagmeme does not have to occur in all Bases of an Amplification Sentence whereas in an Identical Predicate Paragraph the predicate is obligatory and a means of holding the paragraph together. An optional Lisk also occurs in the paragraph which does not occur in the sentence. Another factor in separating the sentence from the paragraph is that the paragraph is potentially much more expandable and thus can have a greater amount of information added after the first Idea.
Examples: Identical Predicate Paragraph

1. Idea 1: Simple Sentence
   karabus tata va saha.
   jail do.and get went he

   Idea 2: Narrative Paragraph
   BU 1: Simple Sentence
   abana menahapu va shana viriripu dema karabus
   man who.was.killed get man living one blind jail
   taba.
   did he
   BU 2: Simple Sentence
   tata va saha.
   do.and get went he

   'He restrained and took him. He got the dead man, he bound up the living man. Having done that he took them.'

2. Idea 1: Simple Sentence
   oroho.
   slept i

   Idea 2: Simple Sentence
   mete oke nonovai 4 deis oroho.
   and there. going 4 days slept i

   'I slept. Travelling around there I slept 4 nights.'

3. Idea 1: Simple Sentence
   mete rei havevoza revaha orata heg'i.
   and we on the sea slept and were we

   Idea 2: Series Sentence
   reima raisikapi varengata nohota kuruholoho
   our rice cook and eat cont and stewards sub
   anahana sata varengata nohota orsta
   us gave they go and eat cont and cook and eat cont and sleep and
   heg'i.
   were we
'And we slept in the boat. The stewards gave us rice and we cooked and ate it and then slept.'

4. Idea 1: Series Sentence

mote masabo.10 emo.10 na.10 rei varesa.10 ama.10
and white.man came.cont.they.chs we fled.and just

sog.10 went.cont.we

Idea 2: Coordinate 2 Sentence

rei masaholo.10 herisiza.10 keza.10 ut pare varesa.10 rei
we white.man's flesh.for strong no.look fled.and we

sog.10 went.cont.we

Idea 3: Time Contrast Paragraph

Time 1: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Simple Sentence

peteve masaholonanga.10 rariparo.10 tina.10 ngetivo.10
now white.man.with we.all well talk

hamegi.10
speak.cont.we

Link: na

or

Statement: Simple Sentence

rariparo.10 tina.10 toutamegi.10
we.all good sit.cont.we

Link: na

or

Statement: Simple Sentence

gipiz.10 nae.10 na.10 manata.10 namegi.10
food each.other give.and eat.cont.we

Time 2: Coordinate Paragraph

Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence
And when the white men came we fled. We didn’t look at what he was like properly, we just fled. Today we talk well with the white men or we sit well with them or we exchange food and eat with them. But before we were ones who fled, saying “demons”, we called their name “demons” and fled.”

5. Idea 1: Simple Sentence

And when the white men came we fled. We didn’t look at what he was like properly, we just fled. Today we talk well with the white men or we sit well with them or we exchange food and eat with them. But before we were ones who fled, saying “demons”, we called their name “demons” and fled.

5. Idea 2: Simple Sentence

And when the white men came we fled. We didn’t look at what he was like properly, we just fled. Today we talk well with the white men or we sit well with them or we exchange food and eat with them. But before we were ones who fled, saying “demons”, we called their name “demons” and fled.

5. Idea 3: Simple Sentence

And when the white men came we fled. We didn’t look at what he was like properly, we just fled. Today we talk well with the white men or we sit well with them or we exchange food and eat with them. But before we were ones who fled, saying “demons”, we called their name “demons” and fled.

5. Idea 4: Series Sentence

And when the white men came we fled. We didn’t look at what he was like properly, we just fled. Today we talk well with the white men or we sit well with them or we exchange food and eat with them. But before we were ones who fled, saying “demons”, we called their name “demons” and fled.
Link: ma
or

Idea 5: Simple Sentence
tupumake demapanze
abanangarabo verihaza vatapanze
house build.will.about people pull make.will.for
mangoha.
him.told.cont.he

Link: ma
or

Idea 6: Direct Quotation Sentence
volo mangepu vipaneta
tupumake demapanze "verihaza
pig feast put.will.for house build.will.for pull
vatata porinanga pota tekepiho tohoza" pota
mare.and these.ones.with this do.will.you.ss do.cont.im this
mangoha.
him.told.cont.he

'And that one was bowing before the elder man's feet and
(the elder man) was telling him the talk and advice and spells.
He was telling him about putting on a pig feast. He was telling
him about the vine for the pig feast. He was telling him about
building a house and getting vine for it. He was telling him
about building a house and getting the people to help him. He was
telling about putting on a pig feast and building the houses for
it, "Get those people and with them be doing it"', he was telling
him.'

6. Idea 1: Simple Sentence

ni lakivoka kohati toutat heza.
you lucky.at inside sit.and be

Idea 2: Simple Sentence

orah rezah ni lakivokananga lakivoka heza.
always you luckj.from lucky.at be

'But you are controlled by gambling. All the time you are
gambling.'

7. Idea 1: Simple Sentence
homevo rekota va gizoh navatotu.
thinking enough no.make.discontinue.imp

Idea 2: Simple Sentence
rariho rarima kezavonanga homevo va gizoh navatotu.
we.sub our strength.with thinking no.make.discontinue.imp
'We are not able to discontinue our way of thinking. With our
own strength we are not able to discontinue our own way of
thinking.'

8. Idea 1: Simple Sentence
ne dede.
I know

Idea 2: Simple Sentence
abana Kunimaipa narinanga ne Lae tohota ne dede.
men Kunimaipa some.with I Lae do.cont.and I know
'I know. I worked with Kunimaipa men in Lae so I know.'

7.2.2.4 Coordinate Paragraph
Coordinate Paragraph does not tend to be very long and because it
so frequently embeds in other paragraphs, it occurs in all discourse
types.

Linkage is only by juxtaposition. The nucleus of the paragraph
is the Coordinate tagmem which must occur twice and has been observed
to occur five times. Two or three Coordinate tagmemes are normal.

There are no aspect, mood or mode restrictions.

Deep structure encoded is succession, overlap and paraphrase
(amplification).

Coordinate Paragraph
+Coordinate 1 +Coordinate 2 *(Coordinate 3)\[1-3
SS SS
Series Sentence Circumstance Antithetical S
Result S
Circumstance Result Narrative Pa Coordinate 2 S
Sentence
Coordinate 1 S Exposition Pa
Coordinate Paragraph and Identical Predicate Paragraph differ from each other in the following ways:

a) Identical Predicate Paragraph must have the same predicate or predicate-like tagmeme in all tagmemes whereas a Coordinate can have any predicate or predicate-like tagmeme, or it can have a predicate in one tagmeme and a predicate-like tagmeme in another.

b) Deep structure differs. Only paraphrase is encoded by Identical Predicate Paragraph but Coordinate Paragraph is broader in its scope and encodes succession, overlap and paraphrase.

c) Identical Predicate Paragraph has the same actor in all tagmemes but Coordinate Paragraph can have same or different actor in its tagmemes.

Examples: Coordinate Paragraph

1. Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

   ahana engapu ngaipu ravatu heta mete pima engapa mar
   man leader warrior become.and be.and and his helpers

   pima gizaropona hatetevai soha,
   his lips.to listening went.cont.they

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

   volo mangapu vizavora ahanapu menapu pulahapevo
   pig feast putting.and man killing bull.roarer

   ritata aha hatatari vizavora aha ravevo mena reztavora
   divide.and man bones washing.and man hold hit breaking.and

   no mai nai porata homepuho haoha.
   all.these.things one.sub spoke.cont.he

   'When a man became a leader, a warrior, his men were listening to his words. That (leader) spoke about all these things: putting on a pig feast, or about killing a man, or about throwing the bull-roarer or about washing dead men's bones or about declaring the pig feast leader.'

2. Coordinate 1: Series Sentence

   gan rezata sogina mete stoamake vono ravah,
   divide.and got.we.chs and store none became.it
Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence
petevo lama zita bera okopeka Garaina lama zita Andrusiza
now aid.post be down.there Garaina aid.post Anulus
koravo ravata beraeka oke.
care become.and be.where there

Coordinate 3: Simple Sentence
demegina beraeka oke.
built we.chs was.where there
'We got (all the things) and the store finished. It was
where Anulus is taking care of (the sick people). We built it
and that is where it was.'

3. Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence
nema nonovo ecy.
my road here

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence
nima agare ravavoka samengivoza zuaita nema nonovoka.
your up.there ridge.at go.cont.you.for likeness my road.at
'This is my road. Like you are travelling up there in the
mountains, this is my road.'

4. Coordinate 1: Circumstance Result Sentence
o Jesu Kriste rejma amipu no nai naituza keravo ni
ok Jesus Christ our Lord everything's strength you
povota petevo nima iriha emego po roza varenzata
therefore now your underneath come.wws knee kneel.and
epata hata mange mangegi.
this say.and prayer you.tell.we

Coordinate 2: Narrative Paragraph
BU 1: Simple Sentence
aliza tpesi aliza tinasi anengi
day this day good us.give.you

BU 2: Series Sentence
tenga reiparoma berisi na reiparoma loporitano ma
did.you.chs our body or our inside or
no nair nai mappu ale tehana povoz'a yinga
everything light broke.it.chs therefore praise
nangegi.
you.tell.we

'Oh, Jesus Christ our Lord, you are the source of everything therefore we come and kneel before you and say this prayer. This is a good day you have given us. Having given us the day dawned on our bodies and on our souls and on everything about so that we praise you.'

5. Coordinate 1: Coordinate 1 Sentence

pi hatetepane mapo ngetingi rari angaraborabanaza hamegitu
he hear.will.he all talks we that.we.people.say
Ongvalu hateteta heza.
God hear.and be

Coordinate 2: Circumstance Result Sentence

haopata pima herisika angoho pima herisika rari sa
yesterday his body about you.told.I his body at we go

ema tamegi povoz'a mete pi oke mapo oke hateteta
come do.cont.we therefore then he there all there hear.and

heza rarima hamegita,
be our what.we.say

Coordinate 3: Antithetical Sentence

pi amapaz'a homeanahua ong pi eteamaha.
he us give.for think.cont.he but he look.cont.he

Coordinate 4: Circumstance Result Sentence

rariroroa loporiizaroha tina vono povoz'a oke hateteta
our.all inside.at good none therefore there hear.and

ama gatata heza.
just wait.and be

Coordinate 5: Exposition Paragraph

Text: interrogative
tairaita?
why
Exposition: Series Sentence

rarama homevo sohota maota ong ravapanenahoho
our thinking go.cont.and again but become.will.it.chs.em

ma home pongi rarama hori povota zakepi takapuho
or thought these our bpd.that.for sorry do.will.we ss

hori povo vetekanahoho Ongpupu amapanera
bad.that throw.will.we.chs.em God us.give.will.for

koravo ravata heza ma hateteta heza.
care become.and be or hear and be

'He will hear, everything that we people are saying he listens
to. Yesterday I told you what he is like, that in his strength
we come and go therefore then he is listening to everything that
we say. He wants to give to us but he is watching. Our insides
are not good therefore he just listens and waits. Why? For our
thinking to become straight again and for us to repent of these
thoughts, these bad things and to throw them away, and so that he
can give to us he is caring for us and listening (to us).'

6. Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

hata vete.
throw

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

maota lakivo totuma.
again lucky don't.to

'Listen. Don't gamble any more.'

7. Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

heza heza raramo tinama koravo ravata bepiko.
our.state.of.being good only care become.and be.will.you

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

naenari ngevo elaenvo vone.
each.other talk cutting none

Coordinate 3: Coordinate 2 Sentence

naenari ngevo va valaharavo oke lesu Kristoza ngevo
each.other talk obeying there Jesus Christ's talk
8. Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

vatamo pota haoha aserariza.
before this said.cont.they white.ones.about

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

paru abana mamoga emata aserarinanga gogovo tata
they men first come.and white.ones.with work do.and
honepu honepu emata gogovo toha.
one one come.and work did.cont.they

'Before they said this about the white people. When the first ones came one by one and they were working with the white people.'

9. Coordinate 1: Simple Sentence

mamoga rei varezata sogiri oke.
first we were.ones.who.fled there

Coordinate 2: Simple Sentence

githolo hata paruma abatavo rei githolo hata
demon said.and their name we demon said.and
varezata sogi.
.fled.and went.cont.we

'Before we were ones who ran away. We said 'demons', we called their name 'demons', and ran away.'

10. Coordinate 1: Question

voropu nima ngariputa koravo hepane?
who your daughter's care he.will.he

Coordinate 2: Question

voropu nima vovuta koravo hepane?
who your son's care he.will.he

'Who will look after your daughter? Who will look after your son?'
7.2.2.5 Exposition Paragraph

Exposition Paragraph consists of two nuclear and obligatory tagmeme, Text and Exposition, and an optional tagmeme, Emphasis which occurs following the Text.

This paragraph type is a means of enlarging on the theme which is given in the Text, of teaching, by giving a question in the Text and the answer in the Exposition, or of giving a rebuke by a question concerning certain behaviour in the Text and an answer which enlarges further on that behaviour.

This paragraph typically embeds in other paragraphs. Setting and Terminus have not been observed.

Linkage between the tagmemes is only by juxtaposition and internal cohesion of the paragraph is maintained by the lexical link between the tagmemes.

Exposition Paragraph

+Text +Emphasis +Exposition
Interrogative SS SS
Question Amplification S Series Sentence
SS Identical Predicate Paragraph Coordinate 1 S
Series Sentence Identical Predicate Paragraph
Coordinate Pa Relational Pa

Text tagmeme is obligatory and is most commonly a question which arrests the attention of the hearers or gives them a rebuke. The speaker always gives his own answer to the question.

Emphasis tagmeme is optional and says 'That is what he said' or 'Think about that' or similar.

Exposition tagmeme enlarges in some way upon the Text, either by an answer to the question asked or by explaining further the statement made in the Text.

Generally tagmemes do not repeat but example 9 shows a repeat of Emphasis and Exposition.

Examples: Coordinate Paragraph

1. Text: Coordinate Paragraph
Coordinate 1: Question
voropu numa ngaripuza koravo hepane?
who your daughter's care be. will he

Coordinate 2: Question
voropu nina ropuza koravo hepane?
who your son's care be. will he

Exposition: Simple Sentence
ne kaereta oke uratete ovo soho.
I dislike there hit and here go.

'Who is going to look after your daughter? Who is going to look after your son? I don't want to do it and I hit them and now I am going.'

2. Text: Question
mene paru gogo tairata toval emamah?
and they work what doing come. cont they

Emphasis: Simple Sentence
pota home.
this think

Exposition: Simple Sentence
S.I.L. gogo tamahave no nai nai herisizatuta sa loporiza
work that they do everything body things for or inside's

gogotafa karara toval emamah
work for together doing come. cont they

'And what work are they doing? Think about that. S.I.L. work both to help the body and the soul.'

3. Text: Series Sentence
mene krismasangi toto tavanahana ret avangi
and Christmas close become. cont they. chs we gardens

mamamegi
dig. cont we
Exposition: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Series Sentence

krismasa navoka ngedeamegina hezana novai
Christmas were at plant.cont.we.chs be and eating

sohota hezana sohota hezana vono ravamahana,
go.cont.and be and go.cont.and be and none become.cont.it

Link: mete
and

Statement: Series Sentence

maota krismasa modavo totoi ravamahana mete
again Christmas another close become.cont.it.chs and

maota modasi va ngdekasa menamegipuho mete
again another get plant.will for dig.cont.we.ss and

modasi ngedevai mete uho ravamahana nameg,
another planting and big become.cont.it.chs eat.cont.we

Link: mete
and

Statement: Series Sentence

sohota krismasavo totoi rava momeamahana
go.cont.and Christmas close become put.cont.we.chs

eteta mete maota ava modasi ngedeamegipuho mete
look and and again garden another plant.cont.we.ss and

ngedevai mete krismasavoka samagi.
planting and Christmas at go.cont.we

Link: mete
and

Statement: Series Sentence

enata heta sohota mete maota totol
come and be and go.cont.and and again close

ravamahana eteta mete avasi menamegi,
become.cont.it.chs look and and garden dig.cont.we
When Christmas gets close we plant our gardens. One Christmas we are planting and waiting and then we eat for a long time (until the produce finishes. And when another Christmas gets close we dig another garden for planting and plant it and when it is ripe we eat it. And time passes and when Christmas gets close again we see it and plant another garden and Christmas passes and we wait and when it gets close again we see and dig another garden.

4. Text: Series Sentence

ari Moimoi abanari vonaizilleoni emata ariparoti you Moimoi men why Elaine come and you all to
toutahana mete vonaiz ariparo pota tamegi? sit she chs and why you all this do cont you

Exposition: Simple Sentence

abana homenagarivi mete pinanga gogovo tamaha.
man two and her work do cont they

'You men of Moimoi, why, when Elaine is with you, why do you do this? Only a few men are working with her.'

5. Text: Question

mete pei tairaitaga rariparo homevo and what thing for emph we all thinking
va gizoh vatsaka? make discontinue will we

Exposition: Identical Predicate

Idea 1: Simple Sentence

homevo rekota va gizoh navatotu thinking enough no make discontinue imp

Idea 2: Simple Sentence

raribo rarima kezavenanga homevo we sub our strength with thinking
va gizoh navatota no make discontinue imp
And what thing will help us to discontinue our way of thinking? We are not able to discontinue our way of thinking. We with our own strength are not able to discontinue our way of thinking.'

6. Text: Simple Sentence

vetemana  vetemana  tokazavoza  ngeti tapuvo

discardingly  discardingly  do  cont.will.for talk  same

hmateta  mete maota kosimarati veteta  takazavoza

cert.hear.and  and  again  back.to  throw.and  do.will.for

tokati maota heri tairasi rari ravaka?

later  again  body  what  we  become.will.we

Exposition: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Coordinate 2 Sentence

heri modasi  rari naravetu  varima  herisi  nena  (ngapu

body  another  we  no.become.imp  our  body  only  God

rari  anahana  hera.

we  us.gave.he.chs.by

Link: mete

and

Statement: Negative Positive Antithetical Sentence

tokati maota vorevakara  vozavoka  heri modasi  rari

later  again  appear.will.for  time.at  body  another  we

naravetu  nena  tapasisana  oke  vorevak

no.become.imp  only  same.only  there  appear.will.we

'If we live carelessly or hear this talk and turn our back on it, what bodies will we have later? We won't have another body, this is the only body God has given us. And later when we rise again we won't have different bodies, we will have the same ones.'

7. Text: Simple Sentence

abana Voriza napi enaha.

man  name  one  cano.he

Exposition: Coordinate 1 Sentence

abana Voripe reipimiza dede mete reipi pimiza va sata

man  name  our.for  know  and  we.to  him.for  get  go.and
A Well man came. This Well man knew us but we were confused about him.'

Exposition: Simple Sentence

nari Masaragun era horapatari nari Otonata era horapatari
some name go.down.will.ones some name go.down.will.ones

nari Urapases era horapanezari reiparo emegi.
some name go.down.will.ones we.all came we

'There were nine passengers. Some were going to Masaragun, some were going to Otonata, and some were going to Urapases and we all left.'

Exposition: Simple Sentence

pote epeka at angaha.
this here question us.told.he

Emphasis: Simple Sentence

sera hata naenapu menamegi povo taekananga
cross say, and each other that we fight where from

verevanaha?
appear.cont.it

Exposition: Simple Sentence

sera hata naenapu menamegi povo rarima
cross speak, and each other that we fight our

loporizaroohananga vervanaha.
inside from appear.cont.it

Emphasis: Amplification Sentence

naota oke eu. vataka oke angaha deti at
again there open make, and there us.told.he above question

angaha note naota iriha eu vatata oke angaha
us.told.he and again below open make, and there us.told.he
Exposition: Simple Sentence

sers hata taenagup menamgep povu loporizarohananga crost speak each other that we ripping inside from
verevanahy.
appear.cont.it+

'Where does our habit of speaking crossly to each other come from? That is what we ask here. Our habit of speaking crossly to each other comes from our insides. That is what he asks at the beginning, he asks us and again below he asks us. Our habit of speaking crossly to each other comes from our insides.'

7.2.2.6 Dialogue Paragraph

Dialogue Paragraph consists of two obligatory tagmèmes, the Initiating Unit and the Resolving Unit both of which are manifested by Direct Quotation Sentences. An optional tagmème, the Continuing Unit is permitted to occur between these obligatory units and another optional tagmème, Final Comment is permitted to occur after the Resolving Unit of the Paragraph. No repetition of these tagmèmes is permitted.

Direct Quotation Sentences can also manifest the bases of a Series Sentence and this is described in 7.3.1.1 Narrative Paragraph. This is a more commonly used mems of reporting dialogue than the Dialogue Paragraph and so the structure of Dialogue Paragraph is not complex. Thus there are two methods of reporting dialogue in Kuninaipsi and a combination of the two is also permitted and is the means used for reporting lengthy dialogue. (See example 5).

Linkage in a Dialogue Paragraph is either by Tail-head recapitulation or simply juxtaposition. Recapitulation even occurs when there is no Post-quote Clause at the end of the Direct Quotation Sentence to recapitulate in which case it is considered that the Pre-quote clause is the basis of the recapitulation. It is not unusual for the actual quotations only to occur and to be linked by juxtaposition. A few examples of note ‘and’ occurring to link tagmèmes have also been observed.

Dialogue Paragraph usually embeds in other Paragraphs, especially in Narrative Paragraphs. It has not been observed manifesting Discourse level tagmèmes. Setting and Terminus have not been observed with Dialogue Paragraph.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initiating Unit</th>
<th>Dialogue Unit</th>
<th>Resolving Unit</th>
<th>Final Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Direct Quotation S</td>
<td>Series S</td>
<td>Direct Quotation S</td>
<td>Direct Quotation S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series S</td>
<td></td>
<td>Series S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Dialogue Unit is manifested by a Series Sentence with only direct Quotation Sentences as its Bases. This is a means of continu-
ing the dialogue if lengthy.

In a Dialogue Paragraph if the word peta 'this' occurs between quotations, in a formulaic quote clause marked with anticipatory subject markers on hata 'speak', it indicates a Pre-quote Clause and not a Post-quote Clause. Such a sentence break indicates tagmemes of a Dialogue Paragraph and not quotations manifesting the Bases of a Series Sentence.

Examples: Dialogue Paragraph

1. Initiating Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

"Aripi Hospihananga emata zeitaza mela tamegi you.too Moresby.from came.and place.fir search do.cont.we
rar'neriza." our.ones

Final Comment: Direct Quotation Sentence which has a non-finite form in the Post-quote Clause

"kara eve emepiken nonor angairoma" hata ...
ok here come.will.you.chs road you.show.will.I said.and

"Where have you come from?" he said. "We have come from Moresby and we are looking for the place where our relatives live." "Ok, come here and I will show you the road," he said and ...

2. Initiating Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

at angha, "ari hasata emegi?" question us.asked.he you cert.go.and come.you

Resolving Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

'ee, rei hasata emegi. rei segipuho agare helata yes we cert.go.and come.we we went.we.ss up.there climb.and
maota verourata emegi." again turn.and come.we

Final Comment: "tina tegi." well did.you

'We asked us, "Have you been and come back?" 'Yes we have been and come back. We went up there and then came back again." 'You did well.'
3. Initiating Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

haha, "aripi taekangariv""haha,
said he you two where from two said he

Resolving Unit and Final Comment encoded as one Series Sentence

"reipi Gumimaipangarivi eve" hagina "ne dede. abana
wo two Gumimaipa two here said we chs I know men

Gumimaipa parinanga ne Lae tohota ne dede. nema
Kumimaipa same with I Lae do cont and I know my

Kanderheolo va vatata reiparo tamgi. kara pozahata
relatives get make and we all do cont we ok climb up and

kuia topikena sak"haha.
ride do will you chs go will we said he

"He said, "Where are you two from?" he said. "We are two
Kumimaipa man" we said and "I know. I worked with Kumimaipa man
I live so I know. I found my relatives and I am working here with
them. Ok, climb up and take a seat and we will go" he said."

4. Initiating Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

miete kiape epata haha "tokati paruparoma monji elaka"
and klip this said he later their money cut will we

pota haha.
this said he

Resolving Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

"vata hela vatakana rekot ravapane"
get and climb make will we chs enough become will it

"Then the patrol officer said this, "Later we will lower the
wages" that he said. (And the reply was) "We can put their wages
up and there will be enough money."

5. Initiating Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

pota mangaha. "miete ape Rahe iwerihata boripu
this him told he and up there Rahe river at for bad one
eve."
here
Continuing Unit: Series Sentence with dialogue continued in its Bases

pota mangahanaho Raena "nina anga roppu this him.told.he.chs.after name.to you woman this.one

narisikama vata heza? ma peteve mokena oke hand.at.only get.and be or now send.will.you.chs there

supane a tawarinaga supane go.will.for ones.who.are.going.with go.will.she

Hoaheholomasga' hanahana "ewe patasinanga oke Gahu-Samane.with said.he.chs no different.ones.with there

nameatu no ong reipimauhoho saka" hanahana no.send.imp I but we.two.ourselves.em go.will.we said.he.chs

"povora pe ni marasikama vata heza." therefore so you hand.at.only get.and be

Resolving Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

rota hanaha mete Raea pata, 'oke rei pi honevoane this said.he.chs and name reply there we two together

tokia'. do.cont.will.we

'He told him this, "But this one is a bad one from the Bubu river." When he said this to Raea "Are you going to look after this woman? Or do you want to send her home with Gahu-Samanes who are going?" he said and "No, they are not friends, I won't send her. But we two ourselves will go" he said and "So therefore you look after her." He said this and Raea replied "We two will be going there together."

6. Initiating Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

mete neho epata haaho "taira hangi? mete abana pongarjiv and l.sub this said.1 what said.you and man these two

emata kansorohoa kapahavera ngiriholo vahaphr come.and council.at roofing.iron.and nails get.they.ss

abana zeinake denaha napu eve heza. mete parupi kansorona man house built.he one here be and they.tw council

vare naugahaphuho sa demahazatine parupi moningi open.them.told.they.ss go build.they.if they.tw money
manala
narab taira home(neg)?
then.give.they would what think.cont.you

Resolving Unit: Direct Quotation Sentence

rete Aten epat haha "rotate."
and Hutton this said.he true

'Then I myself said this, "What are you saying? But these
two men came to the council and got roofing iron and nails and
the man who built the house is here. And if they had told the
council and gone and done the building they would have paid them.
What do you think?" And Mr. Hutton replied, "That's true."

7.2.2.7 Execution Paragraph

Execution Paragraph consists of an obligatory Proposal which is
only manifested by a Direct Quotation Sentence followed by an obligatory
Response in which no quotation is permitted. Setting and Terminus have
not been observed with this paragraph type.

Execution Paragraph
+Proposi

Direct Quotation Sentence
SS Relational Paragraph

Three examples only of this paragraph have been observed and in
each the Proposal manifests the final Base of a Series Sentence and
the Response manifests the initial Base of the following Series
Sentence without recapitulation. If recapitulation occurs the Proposal
and Response are encoded as part of the Narrative Paragraph (see
7.2.1.1) and not as an Execution Paragraph.

The Proposal always contains a command or request in the quotation
which occurs and this command/request is carried out in the Response.

Examples: Execution Paragraph

1. Proposal: Direct Quotation Sentence

angava misiripuho nangaha "ni engarinmagapuho ni
white.woman.Sub =mc.fold.she you one.with.leg.sub you

varama se".
slowly go

Response: Simple Sentence
ne sa horohona ...
1 go go.down.1.chs

'The white woman said to me, "You have a bad leg so go slowly." I went and ...'

2. Proposal: Direct Quotation Sentence

mete "kara sa orata beta 10 kirok emeke" and ok go sleep.and be 10.o'clock come.will.you
nangaha "10 kirok ema zeirevai naraha 10 kirok", me.told.he 10.o'clock come morning 10.o'clock

Response: Relational Paragraph

Statement: Simple Sentence

ne sata orata heho 4 mail, 1 go.and sleep.and was.1 4.mile

Link: mete and

Statement: Simple Sentence

vas vata mete zeirevai naraha 10 kirok ebare bus get.and and morning 10.o'clock down.there
emohona ... came.1.chs

'And "OK go and sleep and at 10 o'clock come back" he said, "In the morning at 10 o'clock come, 10 o'clock". I went and slept at 4 mile. And in the morning got a bus and at 10 o'clock came back down there and ...'

3. Proposal: Direct Quotation Sentence

haha "ni valahata sa". said.he you get.up.and go

Response: Simple Sentence

ne valahata verevata ne tinana emoho, 1 got.up.and came.out.and 1 well.only came.1

'He said, "You get up and leave". I got up and came out and I came the right way.'
8. DISCOURSE TYPES

8.0 Introduction

This chapter is a description of discourses in Kunimaipa and 62 discourses of varying lengths have been observed for discourse structure and conclusions presented here are tentative. It is expected that further study would show a greater number of tagmemes, a more specialized function for some tagmemes and a greater variety of exponents of the tagmemes.

There are four discourse types in Kunimaipa, Narrative, Behavioural, Descriptive and Epistolary. There are two categories of Narrative Discourse, Contemporary and Legend.

Each discourse type is presented with a bidimensional array which shows in as precise a manner as possible, the tagmemes that occur. Each discourse type has pertinent features of aspect, mood, mode and person and these are described preceding the bidimensional array. Lexical and grammatical items which mark different discourse tagmemes and features of linkage within the paragraph are described following the bidimensional array. The description of Narrative Discourse includes interaction of participants in the discourse, and how background information is included.

(See CHART IV, page 221.)

8.1 Narrative Discourse

8.1.0 Introduction

Narrative Discourse typically has perfect aspect and events are in chronological order. Sentences are often long, composed of many clauses and having other sentences and paragraphs embedded in them. Linkage within paragraphs is by recapitulation of the verb, a synonym of that verb, or a pro-verb. (See 8.1.5) New paragraphs are introduced by change of time, by lack of recapitulation accompanied by change of topic or by pata 'this' plus pro-verb. The word mete 'and' frequently occurs paragraph initial along with one of the above but when occurring alone it does not indicate a new paragraph.

Time change is indicated by a change of aspect from perfect to imperfect, by a temporal such as seirevai 'tomorrow', tokaei 'later', zealrap nevai 'morning', by a clause such as 'having dawned', 'having finished', or by a combination of 2 of these. A less common way of indicating time change is by use of a motion verb preceded by a non-finite form of the verb 'to be' or 'to do', optionally accompanied by a time word. The motion verb does not indicate movement of participants but the whole construction indicates passage of time. Time change indicating a new paragraph must occur sentence initial in the first sentence of the new paragraph and usually has a slight pause after it. Only mete 'and' optionally precedes it.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tagmemes</th>
<th>Narrative Pa</th>
<th>Behavioural Pa</th>
<th>Descriptive Pa</th>
<th>Epistolary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linkage</td>
<td>Tail-head recapitulation</td>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td>Lack of recapitulation</td>
<td>'And another talk'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation</td>
<td>Events and people</td>
<td>Thematic and people</td>
<td>Thematic and things</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>First and Third</td>
<td>First and Second</td>
<td>First and Third</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspect</td>
<td>Usually perfect</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Either</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Contemporary-none</td>
<td>Future continuous</td>
<td>Past or present continuous</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mood</td>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>Indicative, imperative</td>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>Salutation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constituents</td>
<td>Long sentences</td>
<td>Real and hypothetical examples</td>
<td>'This is the way it is/was'</td>
<td>Signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long paragraphs</td>
<td>Reference to present conditions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chart IV - Discourse Types and Tendencies Noted.**
When a speaker does not wish to indicate a new Episode (or other new tagmemes) a new time will occur within the sentence nucleus. When this occurs the sentence will be linked to the previous sentence by the usual intra-paragraph recapitulation.

urohota heginu ale telana zeirevai valahata segi. hit.and were.w.e.chs light broke.it.chs next.day got.up.and went.w.e.

'We were dancing and the day dawned and we left.'

The mood throughout Narrative Discourse is always indicative. A negative statement is made by means of a Negative Verb Phrase in which case mood remains indicative, or by means of a sentence type which can have a negative statement in one Base, the overall mood however remains indicative. The only exception is in a quote when any aspect, mood, mode or person can occur.

Aspect in Narrative Discourse is usually perfect. It is not unusual for other discourse types to embed in contemporary Narrative Discourse.

There are 2 types of Narrative Discourse: Contemporary Narrative and Legend Narrative, and the nuclear tagmemes of these 2 types are described separately followed by a description of the peripheral tagmemes which occur with both types. Nuclear tagmemes are those which are characteristic of a given discourse and which set it apart from other discourse types. Peripheral tagmemes are those which do not serve to distinguish different kinds of narrative except as they occur or never occur with a given discourse type.

8.1.1 Contemporary Narrative Discourse

Contemporary Narrative Discourse usually does not indicate mode although present continuous mode can occur to indicate events which continue at the time of the narration, and remote past mode can occur if the events occurred a long time ago. Whilst aspect is usually perfect it can change to imperfect to indicate projected events. Such projected events can be definite plans or musings about what might happen and most commonly occur at the end of a discourse but it has also been observed medially.

Contemporary Narrative Discourse is either first or third person and the speaker must be either a participant in or an observer of the Episodes of the discourse. Twenty-one tape recorded Contemporary Narrative Discourses were observed in writing this description.

The nucleus of a Contemporary Narrative discourse is manifested by 1 obligatory tagmem, Episode, and one optional tagmem, Stage. Episode tagmem forms the main body of the discourse. Stage tagmem precedes Episode and is optional but nuclear to both types of Narrative Discourse because it does not occur in other discourse types.
The optional Stage tagmeme precedes the Episode tagmeme. It sets the time, introduces the main participant/s, gives the location for the narrative, and/or gives necessary background information. Stage tagmeme is manifested by a sentence or sometimes is linked grammatically by verb suffixation as part of the Narrative Paragraph which manifests the first Episode. Fifty per cent of the texts studied have a Stage tagmeme. Following is an example of Stage tagmeme included as part of the first Episode of a discourse:

nema papapu Sauar, nema nonopu Etai, non modapu Savai, nema
my father Sauar my mother Etai mother other Savai my
non napi Zaurai heta nema papapu yole mangapu
mother one Zaurai be.and my father pig.festival
biohapuh
he.was.putting.ss

'My father, Sauar and my mother Etai, and my aunts Savai and Zaurai were (there) and when my father put on a pig festival . . .'

Episode tagmeme is obligatory and minimally it occurs once and maximally nine times. First person narratives are often short and contain only one Episode. Each Episode is manifested by a Narrative Paragraph which begins with a Setting tagmeme indicating a change of time or location. There is no recapitulation linking Narrative Paragraphs.

Following is a bidimensional array showing Contemporary Narrative Discourse tagmemes and their fillers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#Title</th>
<th>#Stage</th>
<th>#Instruction</th>
<th>#Episode</th>
<th>#Summery</th>
<th>#Closure</th>
<th>#Finis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>temporal</td>
<td>Se S (im)</td>
<td>Narr Pa</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Ex Cl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D T P</td>
<td>Dep Cl</td>
<td>Desc Pa</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Se S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-f Cl</td>
<td>Dep CoCl</td>
<td>Coord 2 S</td>
<td>nema</td>
<td>C-R S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Se S</td>
<td></td>
<td>Coord Pa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See 9.1 for an example of Contemporary Narrative Discourse.
8.1.2 Legend Narrative Discourse

Legends are passed from generation to generation and speakers endeavor to keep the wording exact. Because these legends are told and retold, detail that everyone knows has often been omitted and time/location factors and participant movement are not easy for an outsider to follow. Legends vary from area to area. There may be great similarity but a legend from one village will not be accepted in another because the wording and/or events are not "right".

Legends are usually remote past mode and two optional tagmemes occur which do not occur with Contemporary Narrative or any other discourse type. These are Present Result and Formulaic Closure and in the Present Result tagmeme the mode changes from remote past to present continuous. It is on the basis of the two optional tagmemes plus presence versus absence of mode and the occurrence of only third person that legends and Contemporary Narrative are considered to be different types.

As with any narrative the mood throughout is indicative and only third person occurs because the speaker is never a participant in or an observer of the events of a legend. Aspect is always perfect.

Tendencies in 16 tape recorded Legends were noted and are described here.

The nucleus of a legend Narrative Discourse is manifest by four tagmemes. Episode tagmeme is obligatory and Stage, Present Result and Formulaic Closure tagmemes are optional.

Stage tagmeme is the same grammatically as for Contemporary Narrative but lexically somewhat different and occurs much more frequently in legends. Of the 16 legends studied 14 have a Stage tagmeme in which the main participant/s are introduced. In one legend a tree is in focus until near the end so this is introduced in the Stage. Time is not in focus at the beginning of a legend so it is not usually mentioned in the Stage. Occasionally the location is mentioned in the Stage but usually location is not relevant either.

Episode tagmeme is obligatory and follows Stage tagmeme and from one to 15 Episodes have been observed, each one manifested by a Narrative Paragraph with no recapitulation linking them.

Formulaic Closure occurs in four of the discourses studied and is a variation of:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{bataha} & \quad \text{taha} & \quad \text{navo} & \quad \text{be}.
\end{align*}
\]

'And so he lived and we don't know what else he did.'
The only variation observed is a different form of 'be' and the identification of the participant by name or pronoun. In all examples this tagmem is part of the final Episode because it is linked grammatically by the verb suffixation on the preceding predicate. Formulaic Closure has not been observed to co-occur with Closure or Present Result but lexically these 3 tagmems differ too much for them to be considered one tagmem. Study of further data would show if these tagmems could co-occur or not.

Present Result tagmem indicates a present existing state or observable phenomena which has resulted from the events of the Legend and therefore mode changes to Present Continuous. This tagmem follows the final Episode. Five of the Legends studied have this tagmem and in two of them it is linked grammatically to the final Episode in the same way as Formulaic Closure is linked. In one discourse this tagmem occurs both before and after the Episodes of the Legend. The occurrence before the Episode tagmems serves to identify the location of part of the Legend but grammatically it remains a Present Episode tagmem. The occurrence after the Episodes indicates the continued present existence of the main participant of the discourse.

Following is a bidimensional array showing Legend Narrative Discourse tagmems and their fillers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Instruc.</th>
<th>Episode</th>
<th>Sum.</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Clos.</th>
<th>Finis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Dep Cl</td>
<td>Co Cl</td>
<td>Narr Pa</td>
<td>AppNP</td>
<td>Clause</td>
<td>Co Cl</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1m)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desc Pa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See 9.2 for an example of Legend Narrative Discourse.

8.1.3 Peripheral Tagmemes
Five optional peripheral tagmems occur in both types of Narrative Discourse. Title, Instruction, Summary, Closure and Finis.

Title when it occurs, begins the discourse, preceding the Stage, and is a variation of

ngativo haonaza  eye  toho.  
story  I.to.speak here do.I

'I am about to tell a story.'
This tagmeme is frequently modified by a clause (which optionally is nominalized) or phrase which modifies 'story' and gives the topic of the discourse.

\text{deligarono Gazili apanariza tegita negitivo haoma}
\text{we,all.poss Gazili amin.posst we.did.what story I.will.speak}

'I will tell the story of what we Gazili men did.'

A synonym of 'speak' or 'story' is permitted. Title frequently co-occurs with Stage but several examples have been observed of Title and Stage being fused so that the participant/s, time, and location are given in the clause modifying 'story' in the Title. Speakers have not been known to include their name in the Title. This tagmeme does not link grammatically with a following tagmeme.

Instruction tagmeme occurs before or after the Episodes of the discourse and consists of a command to listen to the story. It is not necessarily given in command form but can be given politely as 'I will speak and you will listen', or 'so that you can listen I am about to speak'. This tagmeme has not been observed to co-occur with Introduction, but has been observed following both Title and Stage and in one example all three occur.

Summary tagmeme has been observed twice, once in Contemporary and once in Legend Narrative. It occurs before Closure and Finis and adds information such as the name of a participant not previously named, or it reiterates the names of the main participants in the story. Due to so few examples the lexical possibilities of this tagmeme are not known.

Closure tagmeme precedes the Finis tagmeme and consists of some form of 'about these things I have talked' or 'this story I have told'. In a few examples a word or phrase to sum up the general topic of the discourse is included. This tagmeme occurs much less frequently in legend than in Contemporary Narrative and does not link grammatically with preceding or following tagmemes.

Finis tagmeme is formulaic although some variation is allowed. The word nema 'that is all' must occur. The most common formula is

\text{nena ote haoho.}
\text{that.is.all there I.speak}

'That is all I have to say.'

A synonym of 'spoke' can occur. This tagmeme has not been observed to co-occur with Closure in legends but it frequently does in Contemporary Narrative. It does not link grammatically with a preceding tagmeme.
Other formulas optionally occur as Finis in Legends. These are the obsolete forms nidoi nadoi, top topai mirimir, or giton roetalum rapit, none of which has any current meaning except to signal the end of the Legend.

Closure and Finis have been observed to fuse in which case the word nema 'that is all' occurs with povoa 'about that'

povoa ngetivo nema oke.
about that story that is all there

'That is all there (is) about these things.'

It is not unusual for three or four optional tagmemes to occur in a discourse and two examples of five occurring have been observed. It is unusual for a Narrative Discourse to begin without Title or Stage, or to finish without either Closure or Finis but it can happen.

In the data studied to present the order of Summary, post-Episode Instruction and Formulaic Closure is not clear. No doubt study of further data would indicate a definite order for these or make restrictions clear.

8.1.4 Linkage
All Narrative Discourse makes extensive use of tail-head recapitulation within the paragraph. This is a recapitulation of all or part of the final clause of the preceding sentence. Frequently only the verb is recapitulated (or a synonym of it) but other tagmemes can also be recapitulated and occasionally new information is added in the recapitulation. A pro-verb can also be used as linkage within the paragraph. This is a recapitulation of the preceding verb by ta- 'do' in a non-finite or dependent form. A dependent form agrees in person with the preceding verb. Tagmemes which occur with the preceding verb are not recapitulated with a pro-verb.

8.1.5 Chronology of events in Narrative Discourse
The basic unit of Narrative Discourse is the Series Sentence, the means by which events are expressed in chronological order. Many Sentence and Paragraph types embed in a Series Sentence and in this way the discourse is held together (see 8.1.6), as Series Sentences link into Narrative Paragraphs and Narrative Paragraphs group into Narrative Discourse. Because the Series Sentence is the basic unit of Narrative Discourse the following comments on the chronology of events in Narrative Discourse relate grammatically to the Series Sentence. Other sentence types do not have time in focus as the Series Sentence does.

Whilst it is true that events in Narrative Discourse are usually chronological there are times when events stated in sequence are not chronological. One example of this is the Simultaneous Sentence which
indicates grammatically overlapping of events (see Chapter 6.1.1.2). Another example of non-chronological events is flashback information which adds events which occurred prior to that point of time in the Narrative, at which the Narrative has arrived. This kind of flashback is permitted to be added at any point in a narrative. It can be brief or quite lengthy, and is accompanied by one or more of the following grammatical signals:

1. Following the flashback, the repetition of the predicate/s preceding it can occur. The predicate preceding the flashback can be non-finite, dependent or independent and the repeating predicate can be the same form or a different form. The repeating predicate can be a synonym. The certitive prefix ha- can occur on the first predicate of the flashback to emphasize that this event/s happened previously.

ora horegina hasohana sata
go.down went.down.we.chs went.went.they.chs go.and

horegina ...

went.down.we.chs

'(We) went down and they had already gone ...'

All flashbacks signalled in this way observed thus far have involved different actor/s from the clause preceding the flashback. This means that the clause preceding the flashback, if it has a dependent predicate, is marked for change-of-subject-following. The final predicate of the flashback has a dependent verb marked for change-of-subject-following to bring the participants involved before the flashback back into focus. This kind of flashback is optionally up to eight or nine clauses long but one example has been seen of a whole separate narrative given as a flashback and signalled grammatically by repetition of the preceding predicates.

2. An adjective indicating time such as maoko 'newly', magei 'newly' can occur. This adjective is part of the preceding clause or part of a nominalized time clause which is the first tagmeme in the flashback. In the examples observed there is no formal closure to the flashback. The end of the paragraph is the end of the flashback and the new paragraph has a new time setting.

In the following example the timing of the flashback is established in the first tagmeme of the flashback and there is no change of participants from this nominalized time clause to the remainder of the flashback.
mete magel verevaharaha...
and new arrived.they.when

'But when they had just arrived ...'

In the following example, the timing of the flashback is established in the clause preceding the flashback and there is a change of participants from that clause to the following flashback.

mete maoko puto tahana...
and new that did.they.chs

'But when they had just begun ...'

5. A time word such as vatano 'before', namoga 'first', at the beginning of the flashback. As with 2 there is no formal closure to the flashback. A flashback indicated by an adjective or a time word is typically longer than one indicated as under 1.

(deiparo begina) mete abana napu pi vatano...
we.all were.we.chs and man one he before

'We were and there was a man who had ...'

4. Repetition of a previously spoken event, to bring the narrative back to that point of time. The flashback is then stated followed by the restating of the events following that point of time. Only one example of this has been observed and it seems to be a way of adding information about events that were forgotten at the precise point when they occurred.

A few examples have been seen of events partially or completely overlapping time-wise encoded in a Series Sentence which usually expresses events chronologically. In each example observed the word mete 'and' occurs at the beginning of the clause expressing the overlapping event, i.e., the second event, and the change-of-subject-following suffix occurs on the predicate of the clause expressing the first event. These grammatical features occur, however, when there is no overlap so there are no real grammatical signals when this kind of overlap occurs, instead the clues are lexical.

(emahan) emahan Tolavizohananga mete maota sat
sent.1.chs came.he.chs from.Tolavizo and again go.and

'(I sent him) and he went from Tolavizo and I came and ...'

Another means of expressing simultaneous events is the Identical Predicate Paragraph which has the same predicate referring to the
same event repeated a number of times with additional information added about the accompanying events preceding each repeat of the predicate.

Occasionally one event in a narrative occurs out of order timewise. This can be one event removed or several events removed from where one would have expected it, and can occur sentence final or modal. The speaker makes it clear that he is out of order by using falling intonation plus pause. The preceding event links with the following event as far as anticipatory subject markers are concerned and the out-of-order event, if dependent, has the anticipatory subject marker which would have occurred had it not been out of order. This is a systematic way of focusing on the time or some other factor of the out-of-order event. The clause description of Kunimaipa shows the same thing at that level, with clause level tagmemes expressed after the predicate as a means of focusing on them. (See Chapter 5.4). The suffix -ho'ho 'after' can occur on the out-of-order event to emphasize the time element further. If this out-of-order event occurs sentence final the next sentence recapitulates the sentence terminus and not the out-of-order event.

8.1.6 Participants in Narrative Discourse

8.1.6.0 Introduction

Introduction and movement of participants is as important in Kunimaipa narrative as the chronology of the event line. The following section seeks to answer such questions as: How are participants introduced into the narrative? How are they identified thereafter? How are they removed and reintroduced? How are the main participants identified? How are the lesser participants identified? What are props and background and how are they identified?

There is a basic distinction between participants and props. Participants are usually the human agents involved in the actions, and props the non-human. In Legend Narratives animals often assume the importance of participants and interact with other human participants. Inanimate objects can also assume the importance of participants. In one narrative about an eclipse of the sun, the sun and the moon act as participants with the main event of the discourse revolving around them.

Thus a participant is distinguished from a prop or background information by its level of involvement in the narrative. A participant interacts with other participants throughout the discourse whereas a prop does not interact with participants and normally is named only once. A participant may be a group acting as a single unit or an individual.

Participants and props are further distinguished by the particular means of introduction into the narrative.
In several narratives observed the same participant unit is in focus throughout with other participants involved in a minor way. The main focus of such a narrative is on events and places rather than interaction of participants.

8.1.6.1 Introduction of Participants and Props into Narrative Discourse

The participants in a narrative discourse are indicated by a Noun Phrase, a name, noun, pronoun, by person/aspect suffix on the verb or by a clause such as 'Bauau was there'. The subject marker -ho frequently marks a participant when he appears on the scene for the first time. The use of a Noun Phrase to introduce a participant is a means of giving some detail about that person or of listing a number of people who will act as a unit in the following events.

The first participant is usually introduced in the Stage tagmemes or at the beginning of the first Episode. Occasionally the first participant is identified in a nominalized clause in the Title tagmemes (See 8.1.3). This means that that participant is the main participant and will be involved in the events throughout the narrative. In the narrative mentioned previously about an eclipse of the sun, the sun and moon are introduced as participants in the title of the discourse. In a first person narrative the narrator is not necessarily the main participant and he never gives his name but only introduces himself as he 'I', or omits the pronoun and uses only the person/aspect verb suffix. If he is not the main participant he goes on to introduce those who are. In Legends the main participants are usually introduced in the Stage by a statement such as 'Makoi and her grandchildren lived'.

In the Contemporary Narratives studied the time setting is given before the first participant and the location after.

paraidentaka yei saivertho sega.
Friday on we Saivertho to went we

'On Friday we went to Saivertha.'

A new participant in the narrative is usually indicated by a change-of-subject-following marker on the verb and then the new participant is introduced. This new participant occupies the subject tagmemes of the clause.

... pozahagina Pomeia Garilipu ...
climbed we chs Pomeia Garili one

'... we climbed and Pomeia a Garili man ...'

Occasionally a participant is introduced as object in a clause (which is marked for change-of-subject-following) and becomes the subject (free or otherwise) in the following clause and interacts with the
other participants from that point on.

'hareta' abin Vaitai.zari mehna Guarikamang'a came.across and men Vaitai.poss.ones sent.they.chs Guar.i.from 
sata...
sent.and

',... (they) went across and sent Vaitai's relative and they came from Guar.i...'

It is not uncommon for a participant not to be identified at all but to be just indicated by the person-aspect suffix on the verb. When this happens it seems that what that participant did was far more in focus than who he was. Such a participant is usually on the scene briefly and removed again by a change-of-subject-following suffix. (See 8.1.6.3).

... begna tima topangi elata a.cha.
were.wc.chs our tickets cut.and gave.us.he

',... we waited and he gave us our tickets,'

Participants who have previously been part of a group can be brought into focus by being introduced as new participants.

There are less commonly used ways of introducing new participants without the change-of-subject-following marker. These are:

1. At the beginning of a paragraph in which case there is a time change from the previous paragraph.

mete tokasti paru Inglisholohananga mas rapu master
and later they from.English.people master one master

Novis pl...
Roberts he

',And later an English man named Roberts...'

2. The second Base of a Coordinate Paragraph i.e. mete 'and' occurs followed by introduction of the new participant.

Lae ngdega mete peeka Kokoiqang angapura ropu heha.
Lae wc.landed and there Kokoi.and wife.and son were

',... we landed at Lae and Kokoi and his wife and son were there.'
3. Following a non-finite verb in which case the new participants are introduced in the object tagmeme. They are not in focus and the previous participant unit simply enlarges to include the new participants as the narrative moves along.

... Bosade ngodata poeka ngari ang nangarivi napu
Bosade landed and there girl woman two one
va viiata ...
got put and

'... landed at Bosade and met three young women ...'

A few examples have been seen of a new participant introduced in the Subject tagmeme following a non-finite verb where one would expect a dependent verb with a change-of-subject-following marker. In each case the participants are on the scene briefly and then removed again by a change-of-subject-following marker. Possibly this is one way of introducing participants who are not in focus and who are to be removed again quickly.

4. By means of a quote. This is a way of introducing a participant who is the centre of attention at that point.

"oke nima volo angapu emaha" haohana ...
there your pig woman came she said they chs

"Here comes your pig-woman," they said and ...

5. Participants who are briefly involved in the events of the narrative and who are not in focus can be introduced in the Accompaniment tagmeme of the clause.

ne nema napupura angapurananga akaha Homena
I my older brother and wife with up there Homena
soho.
went I

'I went up to Homena with my brother and his wife.'

The Accompaniment tagmeme is useful also in introducing a participant who has been involved throughout the narrative but was not mentioned previously by the narrator.

ro nema vantokipunanga mete dei pi sata ...
boy my relative with and we two go and

'with my young relative, we two went and ...'
Props are usually indicated by the Object tag meme of the clause, occasionally they occur as subject or they can be introduced by a quote. Props typically are mentioned once but if the same prop is involved with different groups of participants it will be mentioned in relation to each different group. A prop can be in focus in one part of a narrative with the events directed toward that prop. When this happens the prop is named a number of times and the tendency is to indicate participants only by a person/aspect suffix on the verb. If a non-human item is in focus throughout the major part of a narrative it has assumed the role of a participant in that narrative.

8.1.6.2 Interaction of Participants
Once a participant has been introduced he interacts with other participants on the scene of the narrative. He does not necessarily take a major part in the action but he remains on the scene until removed. Normally no more than two participants are on the scene at a time in which case it is not difficult to maintain identification by use of change-of-subject-following marker, without the use of names, noun or phrase as identification. It seems to be a matter of style however. Usually a participant is identified when he comes on to the scene, when he is removed, or when he is reintroduced but some speakers choose to identify participants more often, particularly by the use of pronouns, and if there are more than two participants interacting then specific identification is necessary more often. If any ambiguity is possible the narrator uses definite identification such as name, pronoun, etc. At times the very event described by the verb aids identification of the participant involved.

8.1.6.3 Removal of Participants
If there are no more than two participants usually both remain on the scene all the time with the identification of each clear because of anticipatory subject markers on the verbs. Once a third participant is introduced, however, it is necessary to identify participants more often, to remove one from the scene, or to expand one of the previous participants to include the newcomer (see 8.1.6.4).

Essentially all that is necessary to remove a participant is a change-of-subject-following suffix on the predicate. The scene then continues with a previously identified participant in focus or with the introduction of a new participant. The line of events also serves to emphasize that a participant has been removed. A participant who is briefly on the scene and identified only by person/aspect suffix on the verb is removed in this way. Sometimes it seems that the narrator does not know the identity of those involved so briefly in the narrative. A participant who has had a more prominent place on the scene usually is removed as simply as this also. Occasionally he is removed by means of a motion verb. A participant removed thus moves away from the scene of action and the motion verb must be marked for change-of-subject-following.
'They left first but I waited.'

Another way of removing a participant from the scene is by use of the verb 'be' in relation to one participant. Thus the participant being removed stays behind as the scene of the narrative moves on.

'It is possible to have such a large time gap between paragraphs that the participants of the preceding paragraph are automatically removed and new ones introduced in the new paragraph.

A participant who is introduced, removed and reintroduced later in the narrative is introduced as a new participant. That is, a change-of-subject-following suffix occurs on the previous predicate and the reintroduced participant is identified by name, noun or noun phrase. The means of identification is not necessarily the same as the first time he was introduced.

8.1.6.4 Expansion and Contraction of Participants

Related to the question of movement of participants on or off the scene of the narrative is that of expanding the participant unit to include a new participant and contraction of the participant unit when one or more members of that group are temporarily or permanently separated. This differs from two separate participants each maintaining his separate identity.

In expanding or contracting a participant unit change-of-subject-following suffix usually does not occur on the verb of the preceding clause as the expanded participant unit still contains the original participants and the contracted participant unit is part of the previous participant unit. The verb in the clause preceding an expansion or contraction of the participant unit is a non-finite form or a dependent form with a same-subject-following suffix. The expanded or contracted subject is identified in the following ways:

1. By the person/aspect suffix on the verb. This can be ambiguous because of the portmanneu properties of these suffixes and because they are non-specific. It can be clear that the
participant unit is expanded or contracted but not clear who is included or excluded. The meaning of the verb may or may not help to clarify the ambiguity. In the following example it is not clear who the contracted participant is and apparently it was not important enough to the narrator to specify.

va  ov  wataphuho  volo  naru  urahah  
get.open  make.they.ss  pig  one  killed.he

'They settled the matter and then he killed a pig.'

2. If the narrator chooses to he can make the identity of the contracted or expanded subject quite clear by the use of names, a Noun Phrase, noun or pronoun. The first of the following examples shows a contracted participant following a non-finite verb, and the second shows an expanded participant following a dependent verb marked for same-subject-following.

depi  emata  pozahatama  nema  uantsokipuhama  
we.two  came.and  climbed.and.only  my  relative.only

eteha.  
looked.he

'We came and as we were climbing (the hill) my relative saw him.'

Hahav  zeiha  segipuhoo  Hamunia  abupumanga  reiparo  
Hahav.place.at  went.we.ss  Hamunia's  husband.with  we.all

orata  begi.  
slept.and  were.we

'We came to Hahav and there, with Hamunia and her husband we all slept.'

If two separate participant units are isolated from the original group a change-of-subject-following suffix occurs on the verb of the predicate associated with both the separated participant units. However, preceding these two separated participant units the verb is not marked for change-of-subject-following but indicates same-subject-following or is a non-finite form.

lokata  ngaro  4  iuvo  vahana  nenaor  papa  modarizaro  
went.in.and  children 4  water  got.they.chs  parents  others

medevo  nahana  
fish  ate.they.chs

'We all went in and 4 children were baptised and some adults took communion.'
After contraction or expansion of a participant unit, when the narrator wants to switch back to the original group, or, in the case of a contracted participant, to the other part of the original participant unit, he must signal this by the change-of-subject-following suffix on the final verb associated with the contracted or expanded participant unit. This switch back can be further indicated by identification by a name, Noun Phrase, noun or pronoun of the original participant unit.

ngé povø va vono vategipuho nehoce volo modapu urohonA talk that get nothing make.wess I.myself pig another killed.1.chs

veirégiipuho ...
cooked.wess

'We finished the talk and then I killed another pig and we cooked (it) ...'

Sometimes when a participant unit is contracted or expanded the change-of-subject-following marker is used on the preceding verb. Possibly in such cases the narrator is focusing on the non-expanded participant by not including him as part of the participant group even though in fact he is. Only two examples of this have been seen.

8.1.7 Background Information

Speakers relating a narrative often include information which is not part of the sequence of events or movement of participants. If this information were omitted the narrative would be just as clear but the inclusion of it adds interest to the narrative. Such information is referred to here as background information and it can include the state of mind of one of the participants, an event that could have happened but didn't, an existing state of some kind, or the name and other details of a participant, prop or place. These various kinds of background information have been observed expressed in the following ways:

1. The state of mind of one or more of the participants is expressed by a Stative clause, a Coordinate 1 Sentence or a Coordinate 2 Sentence. These can manifest one base of a Sentence or a Colon or can occur not linked in this way to what precedes or follows.

(nogdata) ne unumug pi hodadey. fell.and T ignorant he knowing

'We landed and I didn't know (about that place) but he knew.'
2. An event that could have happened but didn’t has been observed manifested by:

a) the apodosis of a Contrafactual Sentence manifesting the second base of a Coordinate 2 Sentence. It is supposed that an event which could have happened could also be manifested by a Contrafactual Sentence. In the following example it will be noted that the first base of the Coordinate 2 Sentence indicates an existing state as described under 3. and it is this existing state which could have caused the following event to happen.

lokat entered and reiparam aoaho tepata oraeza, mengo Spell our blessing book they to did he could but "(We) went in and we have the liturgy, they could have had a proper wedding but ..."

b) A Series Sentence with two Bases, both potential aspect.

mte tai tapangezho taira parparo hodade and what will do they ss what they all understand ravapane. will become they "But what could they do, how could they understand?"

3. An existing state. Those observed have been a state which was related to the following event or which resulted from the preceding event/s. This kind of background information is expressed by an independent clause or a Coordinate 2 Sentence.

... guaiiv nepata manoana voha mete abata salt only beginning were getting they and name povu reiparoti keza revaha. that to us strong because it "... and at first they were only getting salt so we really got to know it well."

4. The name and other details about participants, props and places are usually expressed as an Appositional Noun Phrase in the appropriate clause level tagname. This type of Noun Phrase allows more expansion than any other phrase type and a lot of detail can be included. (See ‘Kunimaipa Nominals’), by
Alan Pence, Elaine Geary and Doris Bjorkman.) There are times though when this information is encoded as a sentence or independent clause manifesting one Base of a Series Sentence.

(... mete rei sipha segi.) mete Simbang
and we ship in went. we and Simbang
mengamaha paruhu. (sohota ...)
it. arc. telling. they they.sub were. going. and
', and we went on the ship, the one they call the
Simbang. (We) went and ...'

8.1.8 Cohesion in Narrative Discourse
The principle method of relating events and holding narrative discourse together in Kunimaipa is the use of Series Sentences, the Bases of which can have clauses, sentences or paragraphs embedded in them, all of which is held together by occurrence of the same aspect, the continuing occurrence of anticipatory subject markers, and the head-tail recapitulation which usually occurs at the beginning of each Series Sentence.

The following are two examples from a narrative discourse showing embedding of paragraph within paragraph, paragraph within sentence and sentence within sentence all held together as described above.

STAGE: First Base of Series Sentence

nena engasimanga tohohuho
my leg. with did.1.s

EPISODE 1: Narrative Paragraph

BU 1: Continuation of Series Sentence with embedding as indicated below

sata ogare girinika luhona went. and down. there clinic was.1.chs

Execution paragraph:

Proposal: Direct Quotation Sentence with Amplification Sentence embedded in the first Base

misipu pata baha, misis aus sikitakapuho
white. woman this said. she nurse at. the. hospital

namaha "ari ogare aus sikitak sei."
told. me. she you down. there hospital go
Non-verbal Response: Series Sentence

hahana rei mapo valahagipuho aus sikitak segi.
said. she. chs we all got.up we. ss hospital went. we

"When I hurt my leg I went to the clinic and the nurse who worked there said to me, "You go down to the hospital." So we all got up and went to the hospital."

BU 2: Series Sentence with embedding as indicated below

ne hehona
I was. l. chs

Execution Paragraph:

Proposal: Direct Quotation Sentence

angav misisipuho nanaha. "ni engasinangapuho
old. white. woman told. me. she you leg. with. one

ni varana sa."
you slowly go

Response: First Base of Series Sentence

ne sa horohona
I go go. down. l. chs

Execution Paragraph manifesting second Base of Series Sentence

Proposal: Direct Quotation Sentence

abav wasapu nangaha. "ni opexa nima engasii
old. white. man told me. he you here. your leg

vikepuho ora."
you put. you. ss lie

Non-verbal Response: Series Sentence, the second Base of which, as well as being the Non-verbal Response, is also the first Base of a Coordinate 2 Sentence.

hahana ne helata kangaraha tevorivoli
said. he. chs I climbed. and up. there table. os

nena engangi vihepuh oroho,
my legs put. l. ss lay. l
Second Base of Coordinate 2 Sentence which is the first Base of Series Sentence.

pi kain sata nena etehapugo...
he over.there went.and me.at looked.he.ss

'I waited and the nurse said to me, "You have a bad leg so go slowly." So I went over and the technician said to me, "Lie down here." So I climbed up on the table and lay down and he went over and took the X-ray..."

8.2 Behavioural Discourse

8.2.0 Introduction

Whereas Narrative Discourse focuses on events and participants and is time oriented, the focus of Behavioural Discourse is thematic, with logical arguments presented to support that theme. Time orientation is not relevant. The purpose of Behavioural Discourse is to influence human behaviour through a series of commands and rebukes which contrast with the reason given for such commands and results promised for improved behaviour.

Behavioural Discourse is characterized by imperative mood, imperfect aspect, first person dual and plural, and second person singular and plural. Conditional statements and real and hypothetical examples are also typical of this discourse type.

New paragraphs which manifest a new tagneme are indicated basically by a change of topic optionally accompanied by a conjunction and/or one other new tagneme marking device (see 8.2.3). Conjunctions occur far more commonly in Behavioural Discourse than in any other discourse. They serve to hold paragraphs together in the discourse and hold sentences together to form paragraphs and the difference in their function is indicated intonationally. Head-tail recapitulation occurs also to hold sentences together but is not common.

8.2.1 Tagnemes observed

The nucleus of a Behavioural Discourse is the obligatory Point tagneme which occurs from 8 to 14 times in the data studies. The obligatory Introduction tagneme and optional Instruction, Reading and Address tagnemes precede the nucleus. Following the nucleus three optional tagnemes, Conclusion, Appeal and Finis occur.

The following bi-dimensional array shows these tagnemes and how they are manifested.
The Introduction tagmeme occurred in all data studied and is a summary of the proposed discourse. It usually gives some indication of the subject matter but can be as brief as 'I have this talk to tell you.' In one discourse the introduction was repeated after the Reading.

Instruction tagmeme requests the audience to listen and can preclude the Introduction, or occur before and/or after the Reading.

Reading tagmeme is a Scriptural reading which occurs only with sermons.

Address tagmeme is a Noun Phrase indicating the intended audience.

Both Conclusion and Appeal were observed only once, in the same discourse, and were linked by the conjunction pweza 'therefore'. Imperative mood occurred more frequently in the Appeal making it a more intense exhortation.

Finis is formulaic and is usually nena 'that's all', but nena daraj ngetivo 'that is all of our talk' and similar clauses also occur occasionally.

The audience response after such a discourse is often tins 'good' which does not necessarily indicate that they are pleased with what has been said.

8.2.2 Person, aspect, mood and mode in Behavioural Discourse

Whilst imperative mood is a feature of Behavioural Discourse, imperfect aspect, the police way of phrasing commands, is more commonly used. Thus the exhortation is given by promises of good results for obedience and dire results for non-obedience rather than by demanding compliance by using constant imperatives. Future continulative mode can occur with imperative mood or potential aspect to indicate continuing action which should result from the exhortation expressed.
A present state which is the reason for the exhortation being given is indicated by perfect aspect, usually accompanied by present or continuous mode but not always. Conditional statements which indicate results promised for obedience or non-obsenience are expressed with imperfect aspect, and first or second person. Hypothetical examples which illustrate the point being made are expressed with imperfect aspect, and the person which suits the example. Real examples occur as Narrative Paragraphs, i.e. with perfect, optional mode and any person. Second person does not occur in Narrative Paragraphs manifesting Narrative Discourse but can occur in such a paragraph in a Behavioural Discourse.

First person dual or plural inclusive is common in this discourse type in which case the speaker is including himself also as a recipient of the exhortation. The use of the first person dual is an affectionate way of exhorting the audience to better behaviour. Second person singular and plural are also used although the singular is more common. The use of the singular when addressing a group of people brings pressure to bear on each individual present to act in a responsible way as a result of the exhortations given in the discourse. A Behavioural Discourse directed at one person only uses second person singular. Imperative mood is only second person so first person is always accompanied by imperfect aspect. A speaker does not use only one person in a discourse but switches from first to second, and from singular to dual and plural. This could be a way of relieving the monotony and keeping the attention of the audience.

As can be seen by the above description of person, aspect, mood and mode, these things have a constant interplay as the speaker reasons, exHORTS, explains the results of disobedience and makes promises depend on obedience.

8.2.3 New tagmeme indicators

New tagmemes are indicated by the following lexical and grammatical features which are listed according to their usage, most frequent to least frequent:

1. Change of topic. The change of topic from one Point to the next can be quite different or it can be just a subtle change of focus, but it always occurs. There is sometimes no grammatical indication of the new tagmeme and the lexicon gives the only clue. In the discourses studied this change of topic is always accompanied by a change in person and in some cases by a change of aspect, mood or mode. Since this is not the only time these changes can occur it cannot be considered an overt signal of a new tagmeme.

2. The conjunction mete 'and' commences 65% of the Point tagmemes studied. Other conjunctions function only as paragrapa linkage in the discourse studied.
3. A Vocative. This is usually addressed to a group and is a Noun Phrase such as 'you Molimo people'.

4. A statement such as, 'Now I'm going to tell you this'. A similar statement such as 'That's what I told you' also occurs at the end of the Point tagmeme and indicates a new Point is about to begin.

5. In a sermon reference back to the Scripture reading or the re-reading of a section indicates a new Point.

Two of these features are permitted to co-occur. The conjunction can co-occur with any of the features listed and it can be preceded by such a long pause that there is no doubt that it is a new tagmeme. Vocative can also co-occur with the other features except 5. More than two of these have not been observed to co-occur.

8.2.4 Questions in Behavioural Discourse

Interrogative type questions are a commonly used teaching device in this discourse type and are a means of keeping the attention of the audience. No rhetorical questions have been observed in the discourses studied but since they do occur in the language it seems certain that they could occur in a Behavioural Discourse.

The questions observed are encoded in Question Paragraphs with one example seen of a question manifesting the Text tagmeme of an Expositional Paragraph. Question Paragraphs have not been observed in any other discourse type.

8.2.5 Paragraph Linkage

Linkage within the paragraph in Behavioural Discourse is predominantly by use of the conjunctions mete 'and'/ 'then', onge 'but', povoa 'therefore' and na 'or'. The combinations povoa mete, onge povoa and onge mete also occur in which case mete means 'then'. These conjunctions occur in the prenuclear periphery of the sentence which is being linked to the preceding sentence or embedded paragraph. These same conjunctions also link clauses into sentences and the intonation pattern gives the clue in separating sentences from paragraphs. (See Chapters 6 and 7 where these intonational differences are explained.)

A homophous form of povoa, s demonstrative meaning 'about that' also occurs. It usually has a different function grammatically and is not confused with povoa 'therefore', but occasionally links sentences into paragraphs in the same manner as povoa 'therefore' does. When this happens, the lexicon gives a clue about whether it is the conjunction or demonstrative occurring, as well as pause which tends to follow povoa 'therefore' and to precede povoa 'about that'. The form mete povoa 'and about that' also occurs and always functions as paragraph linkage.
Recapitulation also occurs as paragraph linkage particularly in real examples which are given in narrative style, but it also occurs occasionally in other parts of the discourse.

See 9.3 for an example of Behavioural Discourse.

8.3 Descriptive Discourse

8.3.0 Introduction

Descriptive Discourse in Kunimaip is includes explanations, descriptions of the state of how things are or were, and descriptions of procedures, past or present.

Teaching regarding behaviour is done by means of Behavioural Discourse. It is probable that a discourse that is more clearly procedural, with imperative mood and second person, could only be recorded when accompanied by a demonstration of the procedure. Such a discourse would be incomplete because the accompanying demonstration would speak for itself and a complete description of the procedure would not be necessary.

Descriptive Discourse has similarities to Narrative Discourse but mode and aspect differ in their occurrence, linkage between paragraphs differs and the tagmemes and their fillers differ.

8.3.1 Tagmemes observed in Descriptive Discourse

A Descriptive Discourse is characterized by mode, past continuous and present continuous, which occurs with all verbs except non-finite forms with which it is optional. Person is first or third (and refers specifically to the group who are being described) in all discourses studied and typically only perfect aspect occurs. The exceptions to these rules come only at the beginning and end of a discourse where Title, Instruction, Summary, Closure and Finis are permitted to have imperfect aspect and no mode.

Mode is indicative with an occasional negative but no imperatives occur in the discourses studied. This discourse type is usually plural number and descriptor groups of people but it can be singular to describe one specific person, his way of living or his activities if they differ from what is commonly done.

The Description tagmeme is the only obligatory tagmeme in Descriptive Discourse, and is typically manifested by a Narrative or Descriptive paragraph. Fourteen discourses have been observed in writing this description. In these the following peripheral tagmemes occurred: Title, Stage, and Instruction were pre-nuclear and Summary, Closure and Finis occurred post-nuclear. The Summary tagmeme is of particular interest as it gives impressions or evaluations relating to the preceding discourse, or an exhortation to better behaviour as a result of hearing the discourse.
Descriptive Discourse

Title Instruction Stage Description Temporal Descriptive Clause Summary Finish
SS Se S Exp Pa "that's all"
Nom Se S Narrative Pa IP Pa TC P
Alt S 1P Pa
Coord Pa Se S
Rel Pa

Description tagmeme is the nucleus and the only obligatory part of the discourse. It is most commonly manifested by a Descriptive Paragraph but occasionally a Narrative Paragraph occurs. Some of the discourses studied have only one Descriptive Paragraph manifesting the Description, but this tagmeme optionally occurs 5 times.

Title is manifested by a Simple Sentence which often has the word 'story' or a synonym of it and a nominalized clause indicating which story is to be told. The verb 'speak' which usually occurs is imperfect aspect. An Equational Clause with 'story' but without a predicate is permitted to occur. In one discourse the Title has a Descriptive Paragraph nominalized and modifying 'story'.

One example of Instruction tagmeme has been observed co-occurring with Stage tagmeme. It stated 'You listen while I speak.'

Stage tagmeme serves a variety of purposes. Although time is not in focus in a Descriptive Discourse as it is in a Narrative Discourse, the speaker has the option, in the Stage tagmeme, of setting the time and/or location for the discourse. This can be a clause which manifests the first Base of the beginning sentence of the Procedure and which optionally has a time word such as vatan to 'before' in it. In one discourse on gardening the whole time cycle which operates yearly is given by means of a Coordinate Paragraph in the Stage tagmeme. In another discourse time and location are set by a Series Sentence which is nominalized and as such manifests the Time tagmeme of the Pre-quote Clause which begins the first Procedure.

Summary tagmeme follows the Description and gives the speaker the opportunity to give his own thoughts, impressions, evaluations, particularly if the description is of something that is new, something that he has seen away from home. Summary tagmeme does not only apply to new things observed however, and in a discourse on gardening the speaker sums up with an Exposition Paragraph beginning 'Women's work is very hard'. Only one example has been seen of a Behavioural Paragraph as the Summary. In this case the speaker was describing the way of living in another place and then exhorced his hearers to
listen, mend their ways and live likewise. In one discourse the Summary tagmeme laments the fact that certain ways of the past have been abandoned.

Four of the discourses observed have a Closure tagmeme which is semiformalic and says something like 'About that I have told this story.' 'Story' is optimally modified by a nominalized clause which allows short summary of the story that has been told.

It is unusual for my discourse to end without Finis which is nema 'that's all' or nema haoho 'that's all I said'. At the end of one discourse Closure and Finis tagmemes fuse into tamahata ngetivo nema ok haoho 'About the story of what they are doing, that is all I have to say'.

Descriptive Discourse divides into two general groups on the basis of which mode marker occurs. Past ways which have been abandoned or are carried on in a modified way are recounted with past continuous mode and the word vatamo 'before' usually occurs in the Stage tagmeme. Descriptions of things which continue at the present time have present continuous mode and are either a description of a village activity which is known to all and does not need to be described in detail, or activities which have been observed elsewhere and which are being reported back to those who have not observed them. The latter Descriptive Discourses are much more detailed and descriptive. They can also begin as a Narrative Discourse which gives details of how the speaker came to see the activities reported, and periodically can revert to Narrative Discourse temporarily to give further such background. One of the discourses studied was a combination of past continuous and present continuous mode as the speaker compared the past with the present.

A few examples have been seen of future continuous mode occurring with imperfect aspect to indicate wishful thinking, a hope for a future imagined way of life to become a reality.

Linkage within the paragraph is by tail-head recapitulation, juxtaposition or a conjunction. Paragraph breaks are indicated in the following ways:-

a) Lack of recapitulation accompanied by some other indication.

b) Occurrence of mete 'and, then' or eng mete 'but then'. This by itself does not indicate a new tagmeme.

c) Occurrence of 'that is about one thing that we did', 'I am telling the story of what we do', 'this is the way it is' as the Terminus of a Descriptive Paragraph. A temporal or a Purpose tagmeme is used in one of these sentences to indicate whether it refers to what has
already been said or to what is about to be said.

d) Occurrence of 'that is what we do/did' or 'and something else ...' as the Setting of a Descriptive Paragraph optionally followed by the Topic tagmeme. These refer to what is to follow.

e) A statement such as 'this work is very hard' or 'I am working very hard' in the Setting of the Descriptive Paragraph.

f) Change of participants involved in the procedures.

g) Change from non-occurrence of mode to the occurrence of mode. This has only been observed in Narrative Discourses which have Descriptive Paragraphs embedded in them.

h) Change from one mode to another. The speaker can switch from a past description to a present, or to a hoped for future state. This change of mode can be accompanied by a time word such as 'now'.

i) The occurrence of Topic tagmeme without Setting.

j) Statement indicating time change in the Setting of the paragraph.

Two or more of these tagmeme markers can co-occur and the conjunctions 'and' then' frequently begins a new tagmeme.

See 9.4 for an example of Descriptive Discourse.

8.4 Epistolary Discourse

8.4.0 Introduction

Written material at present available in Kunimaipa includes newspaper articles, narrative accounts written for books, and letters written to the investigator and her co-workers. Written narratives have been observed to differ from spoken narratives in the occurrence of many more conjunctions linking sentences into paragraphs instead of the tail-head recapitulation of spoken style, but a formal study of other possible differences has not been undertaken. Twelve letters have been studied in writing this description of Epistolary Discourse and they differ from other discourse types studied in that Salutation and Signature are unique, and in the fact that any paragraph type can occur in the body of the letter. Theoretically discourses could also occur in letters.
It is obvious from the study of Kunimaipa letters that they are quite influenced by the formal schooling which children have been receiving for a number of years.

In all the letters examined Salutation, Message, Finis and Signature occurred and Message occurred from one to five times. OptionallyHeading, Greeting, Aperture, Instruction, Blessing, Closure, and Post-script tagmemes also occur.

8.4.1 Tagmemes observed in Epistolary Discourse

Epistolary Discourse

\^Heading \*Salutation \*Greeting \*Aperture \*Instruction \*Message \(n=1-5\)

date vocative SS exclama-tion

name Coord Ant S Imperative

Phrase

address Exp Pa

Result S

Coord 2 S

Be Pa

Narr Pa

Exp Pa

Rel Pa

\^Blessing \*Closure \*Finis \*Signature \*Post-script \(n=1-2\)

Se S SS nen\(\) SS Se S

Alternate S

Relational Pa

Narrative Pa

Heading tagmeme has the date and sender's name and address, usually in that order, but a couple of times the date came after the address. Most of the writers who put this tagmeme at the beginning of their letter put their name and address but not all put the date.

The Salutation occurred in all letters. Most of these had dia 'dear' followed by the name or names of recipients and few also had engarim 'woman' following the name. The use and spelling of the names was interesting. Some used given name only, some used given name and surname together. Some spelled as the names are said, others used English spelling. A few of the letter writers also put Miss with the names.
Some remark directed toward the recipient of the letter is made in Greeting tagmeme. Those observed were 'Are you well?', 'I think of you as I write this letter', 'thank you', 'I got the letter you sent', 'I don't have any talk but am just thinking of telling you this', and 'I am praying for you'. Aperture tagmeme occurred less commonly in the letters studied and is at attention getting examination. Those observed are ae 'hey', kara 'ok' and mai zakep 'sorry'.

Also less common in occurrence was the Instruction tagmeme commanding the recipient to read the letter.

In the body of the letter from one to five Messages were written and it seems probable that any paragraph could occur there although the bidimensional array shows only those actually observed. The body of the letters contained news of births, deaths, village events, requests for information, help or material items, and explanations of certain circumstances.

Following Message tagmeme the Blessing tagmeme occurred in which the writer assured the recipients of God's blessing and help.

The Closure tagmeme closes the letter in some way. The following statements have been observed, 'Truly that is all I have to say', 'Therefore I am sending this news', 'We are all well', 'Send me a reply', and 'Goodnight you two', or similar statements.

Finis is just nem 'that is all'. This occurred at the end of every letter and one writer also used it at the end of each item of news throughout the letter.

Signature tagmeme also occurred at the end of every letter and is ne 'i' plus the name or names of the writer. Most put two names and some put an initial for one of their names. Two writers include 'your friend' after me, and one writer adds his address again in two of the letters written by him, even though it also was at the top of the page.

Post-scripts were only added in three letters, two of which were written by the same person. On one of these Post-scripts he adds the date, Finis and Signature again, and on the other he adds Finis and Closure. One Post-script adds further news and adds one further detail to a request made in the letter. The Post-script added by the other writer adds two further items of news with the repeat of Finis after the first item.

Tagmeme order is fairly fixed as described but Finis can precede Closure. In one letter Signature occurs directly after the Salutation, but no other occurrence of post-Message tagmees occurring prior to Message was observed. Linkage within the paragraph varies with the different paragraphs used in the letters. Paragraphs are more clearly indicated.
than with any other discourse type and the following Message tagmemes boundary markers have been observed.

a) Change of topic. Other discourse types do not change the topic so completely between tagmemes but in Letters anything is allowable.

b) A sentence such as 'And here is my talk', 'And here is my talk for you to tell ...', 'Now I will tell you this', 'Here is another talk'.

c) The conjunctions mete 'and' or ma 'or' occur at the beginning of most new paragraphs.

d) Exclamations such as 'sorry', 'ok' and 'hey', as well as the vocative 'woman' occur at the beginning of new paragraphs in a few examples.

e) Some Message tagmemes end with nona 'that is all' and possibly it indicates that the writer views each Message as a discourse rather than a paragraph.

The only one of the above markers which is obligatory is the change of topic but b) occurs very frequently. It is interesting to note that most of the writers made formal paragraph breaks in their writing where the grammatical paragraph breaks come.

See 9.5 for an example of Epistolary Discourse.

9. TEXTS

9.1 Contemporary Narrative Discourse

The Story of our Dancing Trip

This Contemporary Narrative Discourse consists of a Title, 9 Episodes, Summary and Finis.

Title: reiparo Gazili abananiza tegita ngetivo haoma. | we.all Gazili men's what.we.did story speak.will.i

'I will tell the story of what we Gazili men did.'
Episode 1: Narrative Paragraph

BU 1: reiparo sogipuho epekamanga valahata Valeravo we.all went.cont.w.e.ss here.from got.up.and Valeravo sata honata, dapo menegi, go.and go.across.and dance hit.w.e

BU 2: dapo menata data urogi puho dance hit.and dance hit.cont.w.e.ss

Terminus: orata hegī, sleep.and were.w.e

"When we all left we got up and went from here to Valeravo and went across there and danced. We danced and then we slept."

Episode 2: Narrative Paragraph

Setting: zeirevai ale tehana tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: reiparo segi, we.all went.w.e

BU 2: Regirei ravara soheta soheta okoha Gubur Regirei ridge go.cont.and go.cont.and down.there Gubur verevata era horegi, arrive.and went.down.w.e

BU 3: era horegina poekarizaro mapo hasekana went.down.w.e.chs the.ones.there all cert.cont.they,chs reiparo sata horegina ahanaputa abatav Etavai we.all go.and went.down.w.e.chs man's name Etavai pi heha, he was.he

BU 4: reiparo horegina pota haha 'taira tuavo we.all went.down.w.e.chs this said.he what shame segike? hepi kena ne wo lo napu ura go.will.you be.will.you.chs I pig one hit anonana ariparo nepisepuho ho you.give.will.1.chs you.all eat.will.you ss.after
The next day when it got light we left. We went along Begirei ridge and went on down there to Gubur. We went down but all the people had left so when we went down there was only the man called Etavai there. We went down and he said, "Why will you go away embarrassed? Stay and I will kill a pig and give it to you and
tomorrow after you have eaten you will go," he said and we replied "Yes," and we stayed. We stayed and in the afternoon the pig came and he killed it and gave it to us. He killed and gave to us and we were cooking and eating it and it got dark and we put on our headdresses and danced. While we were dancing it got light and we got up and went. We went and climbed up to Zairap village and put on our decorations and danced there in the day time. We danced until the afternoon and then left off and waited and they got food. They got the food and we were eating and then we slept.'

Episode 3: Narrative Paragraph

Setting: katur rava mengehane dark become put.it.cos

BU 1: maota verevata siangi varengza rezata verevata again came.out.and headdress put.on.and came.out.and
urogina zeirevai volo mangepu urupa hit.cont.we.chs tomorrow pig feast hit.they

BU 2: voloholo teza mets urahapuho pitata volongi eve pigs put.out.and hit.they.ss divide.and pig.meat here
vihana reiparo veirata nogipuho put.they.chs we.all cooked.on.hot.stones and ate.cont.we.ss

Terminus: orata begi sleepy and we were

'When it got dark we came and put our headdresses on and came out and danced and the next day they had the pig feast. They brought the pigs out and killed and divided them and set out each group's meat and we all cooked it on hot stones and were eating and then we slept.'

Episode 4: Narrative Paragraph

Setting: zeirevai ale tehana tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: valahata sata hona Guurikananga Haiv ravara got.up.and go and go across.and Guari.Iron Haiv ridge segi went.we

BU 2: Haiv ravara sata okoha Vomei verevata segi Haiv ridge go and down.there Vomei arrive and went.we
B6 3: Voneikamanga sata honata akaine rei nataza Vonei.from go.and go.across.and up.there certain.place's
batavo Horaya hanyaha poeka satsa honata
name Horaya say.cont.they there go.and go.across.and
rei paro dagu menakaza tegina abuna poekapuho
we.all dance hit.will.for did.we.chs man there.one.sub
pota ha ha "abuna maupu ngeti kapota hapazapu
this said.he man owner beginning.talk speak.will.he.one
samaha povoza peteve ariparo sa orata hegzi1
go.cont.he therefore how you.all go sleep.and he.pl
hahana reiparo sata izeira vita orata
said.he.chs we.all go and bush.house put.and sleep.and
hegi.
were.we

B6 4: orata hegina abana poekapu emahana zeirevi
sleep.and were.we.chs man there.one came.he.chs tomorrow
ale tehahahoho reiparo abana shori data visineta
light broke.it.chs.after we.all men loaders dance
uraha.
hit.they

B6 5: urohana ngel giv vahana reiparo nohota
hit.cent.they.chs food got.they.chs we.all eat.cont.and
begina kutura ravahana mauta reiparo data sata
were.we.chs dark became.it.chs again we.all dance
uregi rei Hazomangihananga iriti reimeta uragina paru
hit.we we Hazomangi.from below our.one hit.we.chs they
Hazomangihananga deti parunata uraha.
Hazomangi.from above their.one hit.they

B6 6: reiparo urogin a ale tehana voloholo
we.all hit.cont.we.chs light broke.it.chs pigs
uraha veirata nohota
hit.they.chs cooked.cm.hot.stones.and eat.cont.and
Terminus: orata hegi.
sleep.and were.we
The next day when it got light we went up and went across from Guari to Haiv ridge. We went to Haiv ridge and then went down and arrived at Vomei. From Vomei we went across and up to a certain place called Horava and there we all were about to dance and one of the men there said, "The leader who is to welcome you is away so for now you all go and sleep" he said and we all went and built makeshift houses and slept. While we were sleeping the man came back and when it got light the important men danced the visinet dance. While they were dancing they got the food and we all ate and it got dark and we all danced the sit dance. We danced below the Hazomangi river and they danced above the Hazomangi river. We were all dancing when it got light and they killed the pigs and we cooked them on the hot stones and ate and slept."

Episode 5: Narrative Paragraph

Setting: zeirevai zie tehana
tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: sata honata alaga Gudviz mangepu hanohaeka go.and go.across.and up.there Gudviz feast that.they.say
peeka sata honata reiparo sata izreira vigi. there go.and go.across.and we.all go.and bush.house put.we

BU 2: izreira vita hegina zeirevai ale tehana
bush.house put.and were.we.chs tomorrow light broke.it.chs
era daju menakaka haegina pota hahu
go.down dance hit.will.for spole.we.chs this said.they
"gatata bezei zeirevaiatakahoho cmata daju
wait.and be.pl tomorrow.at.en come.and dance
menepileg". pota banana
hit.will.you.emph this said.they.chs

Terminus: reiparo maota orata hegig. we.all again sleep.and were.we

'The next day when it got light we went across up there to the place they call Gudviz Mangep and there we all went and built bush houses. We built the bush houses and waited and the next day when it got light and we said we were about to dance they said, "Wait, for tomorrow is the time to come and dance". They said this and we all slept another night."
Setting: zirevai ale tehana
tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: reiparo emata erata kohati mange ahopuka we.all come.and come.down and inside big.pig feast.in
e mata dapu menegi,
come.and dance hit.we

BU 2: dapan menata begina kuturu ravahana maota siata
dance hit.and were.we.chs dark became.it.chs again dance
urogina ale tehana volchoho teza meta
hit.cont.we.chs light broke.it.chs pigs put.and
uraha,
hit.they

BU 3: crata ritashapuho reiparo verevata rainiripa
hit.and divided.they.sss we.all came.out.and line.up
tegina napu nima voler ravahara etohota hezama
did.we.chs each.one's pig-half us.do.cont.and be.only
garahata garahahana reiparo emata
finish.and finish.they.chs we.all came.and
veirohota
cook.on.hot.stones.and

Terminus: orata hegzi,
sleep.and were.we

'The next day when it got light we all came down to the big pig feast and danced. We were dancing and it got dark and then we danced the siat dance and when it got light they brought out the pigs and killed them. They killed and divided them and gave each one his half and when they finished we all cooked it on hot stones and slept.'

Episode 7: Narrative Paragraph

Setting: seirevai ale tehana
tomorrow light broke.it.chs

BU 1: reiparo epline vetegipuho emohota Gabur
we.all this.side left.we.sss come.cont.and Gabur
The next day when it got light we all left this side, and coming
came down to Gubur and from Gubur the others came this side and Musania
and Kopia and Sarasarpu and Iajara and Ravaria and I went to Hamiavaiazi;
and then to Hahav village and we stayed with Hamania and her husband
and we all slept.'
The next day when it got light we all came and cut pandanus leaves and made rain covers and we came and climbed up to the big rock and rain came and we came with our rain covers and arrived at Gininita and came down and the rain stopped and we came there into the wind and threw the rain covers and we all came up there to a village. We came across and Musania went back to Urenita and we two came and I left him at Tolaviz. He went and I came on to my own village.

Summary: neta abana okoha volo mangepu vita hahanana and man down there pig feast put and spoke he chs reiparo sogi popura abatavo Enaunama. we all went cont we that one's name Enaunama

'And the name of the man down there who put on the pig feast and called for us to go was Enaunama.'

Finis: nema
that is all

'The end.'
9.2 Legend Narrative Discourse

This Legend Narrative Discourse consists of a Title, Stage, one Episode and Finis.

**Title:** Girisipai ra ngari izaholaza ngotivo ewe haomaza
Girisipai and granddaughter's story here speak. will.1 for

toho.
do.1

**Stage:** Girisipai ra ngari izaholaza Nguruparo hehapuho
Girisipai and granddaughters the.hey.all were.hey.ss

aliza nasika

day.one.at

**Episode:** Narrative Paragraph

**BU 1:** meta mangaha "ariparohu sepikenho
send and then told she you. all. sub go. will. you ss

vasika gipizo velata emepikena yari
garden at food dig and come will. you. chs we

nokota baka" hehapuho ngari izaholzo
eat. cont. and we will we said she ss granddaughters

mehena sata vashika umenisi velapaza hemara
sent she chs go and garden at yam dig. will. for faro

velapaza ma hopoi velapaza ma adakapi
dig. will. for or yam dig. will. for or sweet potato

velapaza ma ginevikapi velapaza tahapuho
dig. will. for or green. vegetable dig. will. for do. they ss

vata emaha,
get and came they

**BU 2:** vata emahapuho hapi namovasi ya varengahapuho ya
get and came they ss pot clay get put in they ss get

varengaha,
put in they

**BU 3:** varengahana ngadohana ngari izaholona
put in they chs cooked cont it chs granddaughters to
mangaha "ariparoho iveriha sepikepuho rarima
then.told.she you.all.sub river to go.will.you.ss our

anmai natu vata eme," mangahan ngari izaho
nest some get.and come.pl then.told.she.chs granddaughters

sahapuho aloaloholo vapaza ma koraiholo
went.they.ss insects get.will.for or insects

vapaza ma veju vapaza tahapuho vata
get.will.for or frog get.will.for did.they.ss get.and

emaha. came.they

BU 4: vata emata varengahana gipizomanga honevo
get.and come.and put.in.they.chs good.with together

ngadoha.
cooked.cont.it

BU 5: ngadohana angavapuho mangaha "sata iyovo
cooked.cont.it.chs old.one.sub them.told.she go.and water

holata emepikena nganaivovo meka.
fill.and come.will.you.chs water pour.will.we

rarinakapilha." "hahana ngari izaho lohana
our.food.on said.she.chs granddaughters went.cont.they.chs

ngari iza geepu sata ise ravata eteta
smallest.granddaughter go.and hide become.and look.and

heha.
was.she

BU 6: eteta hehana angavapu gipizokayiza toketa
look.and was.she.chs old.woman food's lid

vata za gulugulu votora meha.
get.md faeces put.she

BU 7: za gulugulu voloro mehana hapisika era horaha
faeces put.she.chs pot.in went.down.it

anuumaira gipizota revareva.
meat.and food's on.top

BU 8: tahana etehapuho hehana teteholo
did.she.chs looked.she.ss was.she.chs sisters
Finis: *ngetivo nena oke haoho. 

story enough there spoke. I

'I am going to tell the story of Girisipai and her granddaughters. Girisipai and her granddaughters were living and one day she sent them and said, "You all go to the garden and dig food and when you bring it we will be eating." she said and sent the granddaughters and they went to the garden for yams and taro and sweet potato and green vegetable and they got them and brought them (home). They brought them and put them in a clay pot and while the food was cooking she told her granddaughters "you all go to the river and get some meat." she said and the granddaughters went for insects and frogs and brought them (home). They brought them and put them in with the food and they cooked together. While they were cooking the old woman told them, "Go and get some more water to add to our food." she said but when the granddaughters went the smallest one stayed hidden and watched. She watched and the old woman took the lid off the pot and passed faeces into the food. She did and it went down with the food. This happened and the child watched and when her sisters came she said "The old woman passed faeces into our food, I saw her." she said and the granddaughters spoke crossly to the grandmother and told her, "You old white haired woman, why did you mess up our food?" When they said this she old woman got up very angry and got a switch and went to hit her granddaughters but they ran away. That is all of my story I have to say.'
9.3 Behavioural Discourse
You Should Listen to this Talk

This Behavioural Discourse has a Title, one Point and a Finis.

Title: ne kapsa matsa vare vatata baha pota haoma.
If this part open make and spoke they this speak will I

Point: Behavioural Paragraph

Present Condition:

mete ne Sil ahanaa rabi goovo tamobo peeka ne sata
and I SIL people work do.cont.I there I go and

Ukarumpa llei reipi tobeta mete ne kapo epata homeho.
Ukarumpa Elaine we two do cont and I part this thought I

ma kapo epata ou rayavana ne peeka hodade rayavo
or this part open became it.chs I there now became I

pouta oke vare angaho.
about that there open you tell I

Exhortation:

hatetei.
listen.pl

Warning-Result:

hatetekapuo lopori vorouraganena gogota teke
listen will you ss inside turn will it chs work do will you

povoza tina Ongapu mengizapanena gogota
therefore good God you help will he chs work

tokena ou rayavane mete Ongapusa
do will you chs open become will it and god's

kaevovalaan ni mima hakez veteza pinovana
dislike with you your be will for discardingly your thing only

va vziyata tokesavoza ginavo rariparoti orah rereh
obey and that you will be doing hunger us to always

verevoval tohoban.
appearing go cont will it
Present Condition:

- povozara: mete ne Ongapusa pozovora zeltari hetsa porozara about that and I God’s work for place to be and therefore
- ofe vare angoro. there open you. told I

Finish: nena. that is all

'I will tell you this small talk that they revealed. In that I am working with the S.I.L. people I came to Ukurumpa and Elaine and I am working and I thought about his talk. Actually this talk was revealed to me and about that I am telling you. Listen. If you listen and change your behaviour and work then God will help you well and you will work and (the good time) will appear. But if you dislike God and just think about yourself and obey your own likes and dislikes famine will always be in our area. About that then I who am doing God’s work in the village am telling you. That is all.'

9.4 Descriptive Discourse

This Descriptive Discourse has a Title, Stage, 3 Descriptions and a Finish.

Title: volo mangepaza megitivo. pig feasts's story

Stage: vatamo reimeri eteohana abanapu eteohana before our ones looked con t. they. chs san looked cont. he. chs

Description 1: Descriptive Paragraph

Step 1:
- pima volora gigiro veleza tchuna pima his pig and food plenty did. cont. they. chs his
-澜era vosira pimeri mangata volo mangepuzi vizoha. brothers his ones them told and pig feast put. cont. they

Step 2:
- volo mangepuzi vizata haahana modi pori emata pig feast put and spoke cont. he. chs those others come and
Step 3:

varengata garahata sana omaholo puloriha urata emata put.in.and finish.and go.and possesss.bush.at hit.and come.and

volo amagapu manoha.
pig woman her.gave.they

Description 2: Descriptive Paragraph

Setting:

garosi pota tata
first this do.and

Step 1:

garahata maota tokaeti ara urata mete ngetivo finish.and again later ready hit.and and story

mangohana zei okoti opatari aban them.tell.cont.they.chs people.at.the.place.all.around own

patatakari mangohana idera pata va different.place.ones them.tell.cont.they.chs decorations get

vizata va onge vatata emata hareta put.and make.straight.and come.and come.across.and

zei potaka ema verevata dara ngai toha.
that.place.at come arrive.and dance did.cont.they

Step 2:

dara ngai tohama menata mangarata garosi emata dance did.cont.they.chs hit.and light.and first come.and

mezochana va sata zeingika engeooha. step.cont.they.chs get go.and places.at them.put.cont.they

napu nizimpo nemopo au vatogiluha va sata each.one's.one promise make.cont.we.ss get go.and

paruparo zei tupu toha ma they.all feast.houses did.cont.they or

rihave verata aniho voarengcha. planks split.and posts put.it.cont.they
The story of pig feasts. Before, when our grandparents looked, or a man looked, and his pigs and food had become a lot he told all his relatives and they put on a pig feast. To put on a pig feast they spoke and the others came and they built the houses, or made the planks and put in the posts. They put in the posts and finished and went to the bush for possums and brought them to the woman in charge.

First they did that and finished and later they got everything ready and sent word to all the villages and they got their decorations and everything ready and came across to the main village and when they arrived they danced. They danced when they first came and then were taken to their houses, each one was given a place and there they stayed and at midnight they danced.

When it dawned they took meat to all of the places where they stayed and gave it to them and they ate and then left again and went back to their villages. That is all I have to say.

9.5 Epistolary Discourse

A letter from Ririgao

This Epistolary Discourse consists of a Salutation, Aperture Greeting, 4 Messages, Blessing, Closure, Finis and a Signature.
Salutation: dear E. Geary Joan Co.
dear E. Geary Joan Coleman

'Dear Elaine and Joan,'

Aperture: ae
hey

'Hey,'

Greeting: Exposition Paragraph

Text:

aripi peteve tairapunanga honevo oke heza?
you two now who with together there be

Exposition:

pima hangivo ne honeho. aripi Jesu Kristo darima
its answer I thought I you two Jesus Christ our

nonoronanga ari heza.
read with you be

'Who is with you two? The answer is this, I think. You two are
with Jesus Christ on His road.'

Message 1: Exposition Paragraph

Text:

mete engaringarivi Jesu Kristoza abatavoka ne mgativo
and women two Jesus Christ's name at I talk

aviama angoma,
little you tell will I

Exposition: Relational Paragraph

Statement:

Jesu engizata behama rei Dori Sande honevo Sou Koti
Jesus help and was he chs we Dori week one Sou Koti

Manipai Oova mangairata va von Votegina saha.
Manipai Oova teach and made finish we chs went they

Link: mete
and
Message 2: Relational Paragraph

Statement:

In the name of Jesus Christ I will tell you two women this little story. Jesus helped us and Doris and I taught Sos and toti and Manipai and Ouva for one week and when we finished they went. And they bought all the blouses and there are none left. And the bags we made are all gone too. And how much money was collected? I don’t know but Doris does.'

Statement:

inko tara verevahla ne hodade Nata Doris hodade. money what became.it I know no.do Doris know.

Statement:

nai zakepi engaringarivi Sande aligasi ne Doris veteta sorry women.two Sunday I Doris left.and

Saurere soh. Saurere went.1

Statement:

ne zaitaka 2 uwik hema mete pi Kipu sata hepane. I place.at two.weeks be.will.1 and She Kipu go.and be.will. she

Statement:

mete and
Statement:

tokasti maota enoma.
later again come.will.I

'Sorry, two women, on Sunday I left Doris and went to Saurere. I will be in my village for 2 weeks and she will go to Kipu and stay. And later I will come back again.'

Message 3:

mete se Kokoi Ravei sho haemaha ma taira? at
and Hey Kokoi Ravei there cert.come,he or what question
angboho.
you.tell.I

'Hey, has Kokoi Ravei already arrived there or not? I am asking you.'

Message 4: Exposition Paragraph

Text:

mete eve dimi mumugaholoza ngetivo maota angoma.
and here blouses talk again you.will.tell.I

Exposition: Behavioural Paragraph

Exhortation:

Marilyn ngetivo mangei.
Marilyn talk her.tell.pl

Present Condition:

paru ahoa zai taha povoza Va vono vataha.
they pretty like did.they therefore made.finish.they

Exhortation:

pota mangei.
this her.tell.pl

Exhortation:

mete dimi modari zuana nepikena emapa.
and blouses.more quickly send.will.you.chs come.will.they
'And now I want to tell you some more about the blouses. Tell this news to Marilyn. They really like the blouses, that is why they are all gone. Tell her. And send some more blouses quickly.'

Closure: mete nema ngotivo nena oke.

and my talk enough there

'That is all I have to say.'

Blessing: Omgapu arinanga hepa me reinanga hepa.

God you with be will be or we with be will be

'God will be with you and with us.'

Finis: nena rotapu

enough true

'Truly that is all.'

Signature: ne S Ravei

I S Ravei

'I am S Ravei.'
Footnotes

1. Kunimaipa is a New Guinea non-Austronesian language of the Goilalan language family spoken by an estimated 8,000 people occupying a large area between Garain in the Morobe Province and Tapini in the Central Province. The Gasili dialect, about which this analysis is written, is spoken in the Bubu valley near Garain.


4. The term CHAIN has been taken from Joy McCarthy, 1965.

5. The research and writing of the Sentence section of this paper have been carried out under the auspices of the Office of Education (of the United States Government), Health, Education, and Welfare Contract No. OEC-9-067754-14(09)014. This contract was undertaken and directed in New Guinea during 1970 by Dr. Robert E. Longacre.